



Operating Instructions confocalDT 2451/2461/2471

IFC2451 IFC2451MP IFC2461 IFC2461MP IFC2471 IFC2471MP IFC2471LED IFC2471MP LED IFC2471 IFS2402-0,4 IFS2402-0,5 IFS2402-1,5 IFS2402/90-1,5 IFS2402-4 IFS2402/90-4 IFS2402-10 IFS2402/90-10 IFS2403-0,4 IFS2403-1,5 IFS2403/90-1,5 IFS2403-4 IFS2403/90-4 IFS2403-10 IFS2403/90-10 IFS2404-2 IFS2404-2(001) IFS2404/90-(001) IFS2405-0,3 IFS2405-1 IFS2405-3 IFS2405-6 IFS2405-6 IFS2405/90-6 IFS2405-10 IFS2405-28 IFS2405-30 IFS2406-2,5/VAC(003) IFS2406/90-2,5/VAC(001) IFS2406-3 IFS2406-3/VAC(001) IFS2406-10 IFS2407-0,1 IFS2407-0,1(001) IFS2407/90-0,3 IFS2407-0,8 IFS2407-3 Confocal chromatic distance and thickness measurement

MICRO-EPSILON MESSTECHNIK GmbH & Co. KG Koenigbacher Str. 15

94496 Ortenburg / Germany

Tel. +49 (0) 8542 / 168-0 Fax +49 (0) 8542 / 168-90 email info@micro-epsilon.com www.micro-epsilon.com

confocalDT 2471 confocalDT 2461



confocalDT 2451



EtherCAT® is registered trademark and patented technology, licensed by Beckhoff Automation GmbH, Germany.

# Contents

1.	Safety	8
1.1	Symbols Used	
1.2	Warnings	
1.3	Notes on CE Marking	
1.4 1.5	Intended Use Proper Environment	
1.0		
2.	Functional Principle, Technical Data	10
2.1	Short Description	10
2.2 2.3	Measuring Principle	10
2.3	Glossary Operating Modes	11
2.4	Sensors	
2.6	Technical Data	
-		. –
3.	Delivery	17
3.1 3.2	Unpacking, Included in Delivery Storage	17
3.2		
4.	Assembly	17
4.1	Controller IFC2451/2461/2471	17
4.2	External Light Source IFX2471	18
4.3	Controller Öperating Elements	
4.4 4.5	Controller LEDs Electrical Controller Connections	
4.5	4.5.1 Connection Options	20
	4.5.2 Handling of Pluggable Screw Terminals	
	4.5.3 Supply Voltage (Power)	
	4.5.4 RS422	21
	4.5.5 Ethernet, EtherCAT	21
	4.5.6 Analog Output	22
	4.5.7 Switching Outputs (Digital I/O)	22
	<ul> <li>4.5.8 Synchronization (Inputs/Outpúts)</li> <li>4.5.9 Encoder Inputs</li> </ul>	23
	4.5.10 Status Inputs for External Light Sources	25
4.6	Sensor Cable, Optical Fiber	
4.7	Sensors	
	4.7.1 Dimensions IFS2402 Sensors	
	4.7.2 Dimensions IFS2403 Sensors	
	4.7.3 Dimensions IFS2404 Sensors	
	<ul> <li>4.7.4 Dimensions IFS2405 Sensors</li> <li>4.7.5 Dimensions IFS2406 Sensors</li> </ul>	
	4.7.6 Dimensions IFS2400 Sensors	33
	4.7.7 Start of Measuring Range	
	4.7.8 Mounting an Installation Bracket	37
	4.7.8.1 General	37
	4.7.8.2 IFS2402 Sensors	
	4.7.8.3 IFS2403 Sensors	37
	4.7.8.4 IFS2405, IFS2406 and IFS2407 Sensors	
	<ul> <li>4.7.8.5 IFS2404 and IFS2407 Sensors</li> <li>4.7.8.6 Adjustable Mounting Adapter JMA-xx</li> </ul>	39
5.	Operation	
5.1	Commissioning	
5.2	Operation Using Ethernet	
	5.2.1 Requirements 5.2.2 Access via Ethernet	
	5.2.2 Access via Ellemet	
5.3	User Interface, Basic Preferences	
	5.3.1 Introduction	
	5.3.2 Measurement Program	
	5.3.3 Material Database	
	5.3.4 Selecting a Sensor	44
E /	5.3.5 Exposure Mode / Measuring Rate	
5.4 5.5	Video Signal Dark Reference	
5.6	Measurements and Web Page Display	
5.5	5.6.1 Distance Measurements.	
	5.6.2 Thickness Measurement of Transparent Objects	52
5.7	Load / Save Settings in the Controller	54
	5.7.1 Saving Šettings in the Controller	55
	5.7.2 Loading from the Controller	55

6.	Advanced Settings	56
6.1	Login, Switching User Level	56
6.2	Detection Threshold	56
6.3	Averaging, Error Handling, Spike Correction, Statistics	. 57
	6.3.1 Notes on Averaging	
	6.3.2 Video Averaging	. 58
	6.3.3 Measurement Averaging	. 58
	6.3.4 Error Handling (Hold Last Value)	. 60
	6.3.5 Spike Correction	61
6.4	6.3.6 Statistics Zeroing, Mastering	
6.5	Digital Interfaces	
0.5	6.5.1 Selecting a Digital Interface	63
	6.5.2 RS422 Interface	63
	6.5.3 Ethernet	
	6.5.4 EtherCAT	
6.6	Switching Outputs	
	6.6.1 Assignment of the Switch Outputs (digital I/O)	65
	6.6.2 Limit Value Settings	65
	6.6.3 Switch Threshold of the Error Outputs	65
6.7	Analog Output	
6.8	Output Data Rate	
6.9	Encoder Inputs	
	6.9.1 Interpolation	. 67
	6.9.2 Effect on the Reference Track	.67
	6.9.3 Set on Value	
6 10	6.9.4 Maximum Value	
6.10	Trigger Mode 6.10.1 Triggering the Measured Value Recording	60
	6.10.2 Triggering the Measurement Value Output	60
	6.10.3 Trigger Time Difference	60
6.11	Synchronization	70
6.12	Manage Setups on PC	
6.13	Extras	
6.14	Masking the Evaluation Range	71
6.15	Light Source Reference	72
6.16	Hēlp/Info	
6.17	Edit Material Data Bank	.73
	6.17.1 Create Known Material	.73
0.40	6.17.2 Create Unknown Material	.73
6.18	Different Peak Selection in the Thickness Measurement Program	. 75
6.19	Timing, Measurement Value Flux	/6
7.	Errors, Repairs	77
7.1	Troubleshooting	77
7.1	7.1.1 Web Interface Communication.	77
	7.1.2 Distance Measurements.	
	7.1.3 Thickness Measurements	
7.2	Changing the Sensor Cable for IFS2405 and IFS2406 Sensors	77
7.3	Changing the Protective Glass for IFS2405 and IFS2406 Sensors	78
	7.3.1 IFS2405/IFS2406	78
	7.3.2 IFS2406/90-2.5	
8.	Software Update	79
•		
9.	Software Support with MEDAQLib	79
10.	Software Support with IFD2451/2461/2471 Tool	00
10.1	Sustan Doquiromonte	80
10.1	System Requirements Cable and Program Routine Requirements	80
10.2	Measurement	80
11.	Disclaimer	81
-		
12.	Service, Repair	81
13.	Decommissioning, Disposal	81

Acces	sories, Servic	es	
Factor	y Settings		
Xenon	Light Source	IFX2471	
Warning	js		
Function	nality	ded in Delivery Assessmine and lastellation	
		ded in Delivery, Accessories and Installation	
Operati	ng Elements		
		mp Module	
Multila	ver Measuren	nent, Controller IFC24x1MP	
User Int	erface	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
A 4.1.1 A 4.1.2		ings / Measuring Program	
A 4.1.2	Measuremen	for Multilayer Measurements ts (Measurement Values Versus Time Diagram)	
LED Me	aning for Multila	yer Measurements	
		Selection	
A 4.3.1 A 4.3.2	Switching Ou	ıtputs / Limit Valuesut ut	
	•		
Adjust Function	able Mounting ns	g Adapter JMA-xx	
Sensor	Mounting, Com	patibility	
Assemb	lv		
		f Mounting Adapter It of Sensor	
•	0		
Cleani	ng Optical Co	mponents	
		• ents	
Protecti	ve Glass of Sens	sor	
Interfac	e between Contr	roller and Sensor Cable	
Interfac	e between Sens	or Cable and Sensor	
Fleveni	ive Frotection		
		on with Controller	
General			
General Comma	nds Overview		
General Comma	nds Overview Commands General		
General Comma General	nds Overview Commands General A 7.3.1.1 F	lelp	
General Comma General	nds Overview Commands General A 7.3.1.1 H A 7.3.1.2 C	Help Controller Information	102 102 105 105 105 105 105
General Comma General	nds Overview Commands General A 7.3.1.1 H A 7.3.1.2 C A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.4 P	Help Controller Information Reply Type Parameter Overview	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 105
General Comma General	nds Overview Commands General A 7.3.1.1 H A 7.3.1.2 C A 7.3.1.3 C A 7.3.1.4 P A 7.3.1.5 S	Help Controller Information Reply Type arameter Overview Synchronization	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 105
General Comma General	nds Overview Commands General A 7.3.1.1 H A 7.3.1.2 C A 7.3.1.3 R A 7.3.1.3 P A 7.3.1.4 P A 7.3.1.5 S A 7.3.1.6 E	telp Controller Information Reply Type arameter Overview Synchronization Socting the Sensor	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 106 106
General Comma General	nds Overview Commands General A 7.3.1.1 H A 7.3.1.2 C A 7.3.1.3 R A 7.3.1.4 P A 7.3.1.5 S A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.7 C	telp Controller Information Peply Type Parameter Overview Synchronization Sooting the Sensor Querying the Controller Temperature	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 106 106
General Comma General A 7.3.1	nds Overview Commands General A 7.3.1.1 H A 7.3.1.2 C A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.5 S A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.7 C User Level	telp Controller Information Reply Type arameter Overview Synchronization Socting the Sensor	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 106 106 106 106
General Comma General A 7.3.1	nds Overview Commands General A 7.3.1.1 H A 7.3.1.2 C A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.4 P A 7.3.1.5 B A 7.3.1.6 B A 7.3.1.7 C User Level A 7.3.2.1 C A 7.3.2.2 C	Help         Controller Information         Reply Type         Parameter Overview         Synchronization         Booting the Sensor         Querying the Controller Temperature         Changing the User Level         Changing to User Level	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 106 106 106 106 106 106 106
General Comma General A 7.3.1	nds Overview Commands General A 7.3.1.1 H A 7.3.1.2 C A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.5 S A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.7 C User Level A 7.3.2.1 C A 7.3.2.2 C A 7.3.2.3 C	Help Controller Information Reply Type Parameter Overview Synchronization Booting the Sensor Querying the Controller Temperature Changing the User Level Changing to User Level Querying the User Level	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106
General Comma General A 7.3.1	nds Overview General A 7.3.1.1 H A 7.3.1.2 C A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.5 S A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.7 C User Level A 7.3.2.1 C A 7.3.2.3 C A 7.3.2.3 C A 7.3.2.4 C	Help Controller Information Reply Type Parameter Overview Synchronization Booting the Sensor Querying the Controller Temperature Changing the User Level Changing to User Level Duerying the User Level Duerying the User Level Duerying the User Level	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106
General Comma General A 7.3.1	nds Overview Commands General A 7.3.1.1 H A 7.3.1.2 G A 7.3.1.3 H A 7.3.1.4 P A 7.3.1.5 S A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.7 G User Level A 7.3.2.1 G A 7.3.2.2 G A 7.3.2.4 D A 7.3.2.5 G Sensor	Help Controller Information Reply Type Parameter Overview Synchronization Booting the Sensor Querying the Controller Temperature Changing the User Level Changing to User Level Querying the User Level	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106
General Comma General A 7.3.1	nds Overview General A 7.3.1.1 H A 7.3.1.2 G A 7.3.1.3 H A 7.3.1.2 G A 7.3.1.4 P A 7.3.1.5 S A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.7 G User Level A 7.3.2.1 G A 7.3.2.2 G A 7.3.2.3 G A 7.3.2.4 D A 7.3.2.5 G Sensor A 7.3.3.1 Ir	Help         Controller Information         Reply Type         arameter Overview         Synchronization         Booting the Sensor         Querying the Controller Temperature         Changing the User Level         Changing to User Level         Querying the User Level         Defining a Standard User         Changing the Password	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106
General Comma General A 7.3.1	nds Overview General A 7.3.1.1 F A 7.3.1.2 G A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.5 S A 7.3.1.5 S A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.7 G User Level A 7.3.2.1 G A 7.3.2.2 G A 7.3.2.3 G A 7.3.2.4 D A 7.3.2.5 S Sensor A 7.3.3.1 Ir A 7.3.3.1 Ir A 7.3.3.2 S	Help         Controller Information         Reply Type         arameter Overview         Synchronization         Booting the Sensor         Querying the Controller Temperature         Changing the User Level         Changing to User Level         Querying the User Level         Defining a Standard User         Changing the Password         Info about Calibration Tables         Sensor Number	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 107 107
General Comma General A 7.3.1	nds Overview Commands General A 7.3.1.1 F A 7.3.1.2 G A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.5 S A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.7 G User Level A 7.3.2.1 G A 7.3.2.2 G A 7.3.2.3 G A 7.3.2.4 E A 7.3.2.5 Sensor A 7.3.3.1 Ir A 7.3.3.1 Ir A 7.3.3.2 S A 7.3.3.3 S	telp	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 107 107 107
General Comma General A 7.3.1	nds Overview Commands A 7.3.1.1 H A 7.3.1.2 C A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.5 S A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.7 C User Level A 7.3.2.2 C A 7.3.2.3 C A 7.3.2.4 D A 7.3.2.5 C Sensor A 7.3.3.1 Ir A 7.3.3.2 S A 7.3.3.3 S A 7.3.3.4 D	Help Controller Information Reply Type Parameter Overview Synchronization Booting the Sensor Querying the Controller Temperature Changing the User Level Changing to User Level Querying the User Level Defining a Standard User Changing the Password Changing the Password Changing the Password Changing the Password Changing the Calibration Tables Sensor Number Sensor Information Dark Correction	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106
General Comma General A 7.3.1	nds Overview Commands A 7.3.1.1 H A 7.3.1.2 C A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.5 S A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.7 C User Level A 7.3.2.1 C A 7.3.2.3 C A 7.3.2.3 C A 7.3.2.4 C A 7.3.2.5 C Sensor A 7.3.3.1 Ir A 7.3.3.2 S A 7.3.3.4 C A 7.3.3.5 V A 7.3.3.6 L	Help         Controller Information         Reply Type         Parameter Overview         Synchronization         Booting the Sensor         Querying the Controller Temperature         Changing the User Level         Changing to User Level         Querying the User Level         Defining a Standard User         Changing the Password         Sensor Number         Sensor Information         Dark Correction         Varning Threshold in the Event of Contamination         Light Correction	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106
General Comma General A 7.3.1	nds Overview General A 7.3.1.1 H A 7.3.1.2 G A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.5 S A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.7 G User Level A 7.3.2.1 G A 7.3.2.1 G A 7.3.2.2 G A 7.3.2.3 G A 7.3.2.3 C A 7.3.2.3 C A 7.3.2.4 E A 7.3.2.5 C Sensor A 7.3.3.1 Ir A 7.3.3.2 S A 7.3.3.3 E A 7.3.3.3 C A 7.3.3.5 V A 7.3.3.6 L Trigger Mode	Help         Controller Information         Reply Type         Parameter Overview         Synchronization         Booting the Sensor         Querying the Controller Temperature         Changing the User Level         Changing to User Level         Querying the User Level         Defining a Standard User         Changing the Password         Model         Defining a Standard User         Changing the Password         Model         Defining a Standard User         Changing the Password         Model         Changing the Password         Model         Model         Correction         Varning Threshold in the Event of Contamination         Light Correction	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106
General Comma General A 7.3.1	nds Overview Commands General A 7.3.1.1 H A 7.3.1.2 G A 7.3.1.3 R A 7.3.1.3 R A 7.3.1.4 P A 7.3.1.5 S A 7.3.1.6 B A 7.3.1.7 G User Level A 7.3.2.1 G A 7.3.2.1 G A 7.3.2.2 G A 7.3.2.2 G A 7.3.2.4 D A 7.3.2.5 G Sensor A 7.3.3.1 Ir A 7.3.3.1 Ir A 7.3.3.2 S A 7.3.3.3 S A 7.3.3.4 D A 7.3.3.6 L Trigger Mode A 7.3.4.1 T	Help         Controller Information         Reply Type         arameter Overview         Synchronization         Booting the Sensor         Querying the Controller Temperature         Changing the User Level         Changing to User Level         Querying the User Level         Defining a Standard User         Changing the Password         Info about Calibration Tables         Sensor Number         Sensor Information         Dark Correction         Varning Threshold in the Event of Contamination         ight Correction         Sensor	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106
General Comma General A 7.3.1	nds Overview Commands General A 7.3.1.1 F A 7.3.1.2 G A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.4 P A 7.3.1.5 S A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.7 G User Level A 7.3.2.1 C A 7.3.2.1 C A 7.3.2.2 G A 7.3.2.2 G A 7.3.2.4 C A 7.3.2.5 C Sensor A 7.3.3.1 Ir A 7.3.3.2 S A 7.3.3.2 S A 7.3.3.3 S A 7.3.3.4 C A 7.3.3.5 L Trigger Mode A 7.3.4.1 T A 7.3.4.2 E	Help         Controller Information         Reply Type         arameter Overview         Synchronization         Booting the Sensor         Querying the Controller Temperature         Changing the User Level         Changing to User Level         Querying the User Level         Defining a Standard User         Changing the Password         Info about Calibration Tables         Sensor Number         Sensor Information         Dark Correction         Varning Threshold in the Event of Contamination         ight Correction         Sensor         Sensor         Sensor         Sensor Information         Dark Correction         Sensor         Sensor <td>102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107</td>	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107
General Comma General A 7.3.1	nds Overview General A 7.3.1.1 H A 7.3.1.2 C A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.5 S A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.7 C User Level A 7.3.2.2 C A 7.3.2.3 C A 7.3.2.3 C A 7.3.2.4 D A 7.3.2.5 C Sensor A 7.3.3.3 S A 7.3.3.3 S A 7.3.3.4 D A 7.3.3.6 L Trigger Mode A 7.3.4.1 T A 7.3.4.2 T A 7.3.4.3 T A 7.3.4.3 T	Help Controller Information Reply Type Parameter Overview Synchronization Booting the Sensor Querying the Controller Temperature Changing the User Level Changing to User Level Querying the User Level Changing the User Level Defining a Standard User Changing the Password Mark Correction Dark Correction Sensor Information Dark Correction Sensor Information Dark Correction Sensor Information Dark Correction Sensor Information Dark Correction Sensor Information Dark Correction Sensor Type Sensor T	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107
General Comma General A 7.3.1	nds Overview General A 7.3.1.1 H A 7.3.1.2 C A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.5 S A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.7 C User Level A 7.3.2.2 C A 7.3.2.3 C A 7.3.2.3 C A 7.3.2.4 D A 7.3.3.1 Ir A 7.3.3.2 S A 7.3.3.2 S A 7.3.3.3 V A 7.3.3.3 V A 7.3.3.4 D A 7.3.4.1 T A 7.3.4.2 E A 7.3.4.4 N A 7.3.4.5 S	Help         Controller Information         Reply Type         Parameter Overview         Synchronization         Booting the Sensor         Querying the Controller Temperature         Changing the User Level         Changing the User Level         Defining a Standard User         Changing the Password         Info about Calibration Tables         Sensor Number         Sensor Information         Dark Correction         Varning Threshold in the Event of Contamination         ight Correction         vs.         rigger Type         Effect of the Trigger Input         rigger Level         Number of Output Measurement Values         Software Trigger Pulse	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107
General Comma General A 7.3.1 A 7.3.2 A 7.3.3 A 7.3.4	nds Overview General A 7.3.1.1 H A 7.3.1.2 C A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.5 S A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.6 C User Level A 7.3.2.1 C A 7.3.2.2 C A 7.3.2.3 C A 7.3.2.3 C A 7.3.2.4 C A 7.3.3.1 Ir A 7.3.3.2 S A 7.3.3.3 V A 7.3.3.3 V A 7.3.3.5 V A 7.3.3.6 L Trigger Mode A 7.3.4.1 T A 7.3.4.2 E A 7.3.4.5 S A 7.3.4.6 S	Help         Controller Information         Reply Type         Parameter Overview         Synchronization         Booting the Sensor         Querying the Controller Temperature         Changing the User Level         Changing the User Level         Defining a Standard User         Changing the Password         Info about Calibration Tables         Sensor Number         Sensor Information         Dark Correction         Varning Threshold in the Event of Contamination         ight Correction         Varning Threshold in the Event Values         Software Trigger Input         rigger Level         Software Trigger Pulse         Settings Encoder Triggering	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107
General Comma General A 7.3.1	nds Overview General A 7.3.1.1 H A 7.3.1.2 G A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.5 S A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.7 G User Level A 7.3.2.1 G A 7.3.2.2 G A 7.3.2.3 G A 7.3.2.3 G A 7.3.2.3 G A 7.3.2.4 E A 7.3.2.5 G Sensor A 7.3.3.1 Ir A 7.3.3.2 S A 7.3.3.3 E A 7.3.3.3 C A 7.3.3.3 C A 7.3.3.3 C A 7.3.3.3 C A 7.3.3.3 C A 7.3.3.4 C A 7.3.4.1 T A 7.3.4.2 E A 7.3.4.5 S A 7.3.4.6 S Encoder	Help         Controller Information         Reply Type         Parameter Overview         Synchronization         Booting the Sensor         Querying the Controller Temperature         Changing the User Level         Changing to User Level         Querying the User Level         Defining a Standard User         Changing the Password         Provide the Controller Tables         Sensor Number         Sensor Information         Dark Correction         Varning Threshold in the Event of Contamination         Light Correction         Particle the Trigger Input         Trigger Type         Effect of the Trigger Input         Trigger Level         Jumber of Output Measurement Values         Software Trigger Pulse         Settings Encoder Triggering	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106
General Comma General A 7.3.1 A 7.3.2 A 7.3.3 A 7.3.4	nds Overview Commands General A 7.3.1.1 F A 7.3.1.2 G A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.4 P A 7.3.1.5 S A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.7 G User Level A 7.3.2.1 C A 7.3.2.2 G A 7.3.2.2 G A 7.3.2.3 G A 7.3.2.4 C A 7.3.2.5 C Sensor A 7.3.3.1 Ir A 7.3.3.2 S A 7.3.3.3 S A 7.3.3.3 S A 7.3.3.3 C A 7.3.3.3 C A 7.3.3.4 C A 7.3.3.6 L Trigger Mode A 7.3.4.1 T A 7.3.4.2 E A 7.3.4.3 T A 7.3.4.5 S Encoder A 7.3.5.1 E A 7.3.5.1 E	Help         Controller Information         Reply Type         Parameter Overview         Synchronization         Bouting the Sensor         Querying the Controller Temperature         Changing the User Level         Changing to User Level         Querying the User Level         Querying the User Level         Defining a Standard User         Changing the Password         Info about Calibration Tables         Sensor Number         Sensor Information         Dark Correction         Varining Threshold in the Event of Contamination         igger Type         Effect of the Trigger Input         rigger Level         Number of Output Measurement Values         Software Trigger Pulse         Settings Encoder Triggering         Incoder Interpolation Depth         Effect of the Reference Track	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107
General Comma General A 7.3.1 A 7.3.2 A 7.3.3 A 7.3.4	nds Overview Commands A 7.3.1.1 F A 7.3.1.2 G A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.4 P A 7.3.1.5 S A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.7 G User Level A 7.3.2.1 G A 7.3.2.1 G A 7.3.2.2 G A 7.3.2.2 G A 7.3.2.3 G A 7.3.2.4 C A 7.3.2.5 G Sensor A 7.3.3.1 Ir A 7.3.3.2 S A 7.3.3.3 S A 7.3.3.3 S A 7.3.3.4 C A 7.3.3.5 L Trigger Mode A 7.3.4.1 T A 7.3.4.2 E A 7.3.4.3 T A 7.3.4.5 S A 7.3.4.6 S Encoder A 7.3.5.1 E A 7.3.5.2 E A 7.3.5.3 E	Help         Controller Information         Reply Type         Parameter Overview         Synchronization         Booting the Sensor         Querying the Controller Temperature         Changing the User Level         Changing to User Level         Querying the User Level         Defining a Standard User         Changing the Password         Info about Calibration Tables         Sensor Number         Sensor Information         Dark Correction         Varning Threshold in the Event of Contamination         ight Correction         Iffect of the Trigger Input         rigger Type         Effect of the Trigger Pulse         Software Trigger Pulse         Settings Encoder Triggering         Encoder Interpolation Depth         Effect of the Reference Track         Encoder Value	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107
General Comma General A 7.3.1 A 7.3.2 A 7.3.3 A 7.3.4	nds Overview General A 7.3.1.1 H A 7.3.1.2 C A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.5 S A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.7 C User Level A 7.3.2.2 C A 7.3.2.3 C A 7.3.2.3 C A 7.3.2.4 D A 7.3.2.5 C Sensor A 7.3.3.1 Ir A 7.3.3.2 S A 7.3.3.3 S A 7.3.3.3 S A 7.3.3.4 D A 7.3.3.5 V A 7.3.4.1 T A 7.3.4.1 T A 7.3.4.2 E A 7.3.4.3 T A 7.3.4.5 S A 7.3.4.5 S A 7.3.4.6 S Encoder A 7.3.5.1 E A 7.3.5.3 E A 7.3.5.3 E A 7.3.5.3 S	Help         Controller Information         Reply Type         Parameter Overview         Synchronization         Booting the Sensor         Querying the Controller Temperature         Changing the User Level         Changing to User Level         Defining a Standard User         Changing the Password         Info about Calibration Tables         Sensor Number         Sensor Number         Sensor Information         Dark Correction         Varning Threshold in the Event of Contamination         ight Correction         Sensor Type         "rigger Type         "fight Correction         Settings Encoder Trigger Input         "rigger Level         Software Trigger Pulse         Settings Encoder Triggering         Encoder Interpolation Depth         Effect of the Reference Track         Incoder Value         Setting Encoder Value per Software	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107
General Comma General A 7.3.1 A 7.3.2 A 7.3.3 A 7.3.4	nds Overview General A 7.3.1.1 H A 7.3.1.2 C A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.5 S A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.7 C User Level A 7.3.2.2 C A 7.3.2.3 C A 7.3.2.3 C A 7.3.2.4 D A 7.3.2.5 C Sensor A 7.3.3.1 Ir A 7.3.3.2 S A 7.3.3.2 S A 7.3.3.3 S A 7.3.3.4 D A 7.3.3.5 V A 7.3.4.4 N A 7.3.4.5 S A 7.3.4.5 S A 7.3.4.6 S Encoder A 7.3.5.1 E A 7.3.5.2 E A 7.3.5.3 F	Help         Controller Information         Reply Type         Parameter Overview         Synchronization         Booting the Sensor         Querying the Controller Temperature         Changing the User Level         Changing the User Level         Defining a Standard User         Changing the Password         Info about Calibration Tables         Sensor Number         Sensor Number         Sensor Information         Dark Correction         User         Ight Correction         Ight Correction         Sensor Type         Frigger Type         Sensor Trigger Input         Trigger Type         Settings Encoder Trigger Input         Software Trigger Pulse         Settings Encoder Triggering         Incoder Interpolation Depth         Effect of the Reference Track         Incoder Value         Setting Encoder Value per Software         Reset the Detection of the First Marker Position	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107
General Comma General A 7.3.1 A 7.3.2 A 7.3.3 A 7.3.3	nds Overview General A 7.3.1.1 H A 7.3.1.2 C A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.3 F A 7.3.1.5 S A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.6 E A 7.3.1.7 C User Level A 7.3.2.2 C A 7.3.2.3 C A 7.3.2.3 C A 7.3.2.4 D A 7.3.2.5 C Sensor A 7.3.3.1 Ir A 7.3.3.2 S A 7.3.3.2 S A 7.3.3.3 K A 7.3.3.3 V A 7.3.3.3 V A 7.3.3.3 C A 7.3.3.4 D A 7.3.4.1 T A 7.3.4.2 E A 7.3.4.2 E A 7.3.4.5 S A 7.3.4.6 S Encoder A 7.3.5.1 E A 7.3.5.1 E A 7.3.5.5 F A 7.3.5.5 F A 7.3.5.6 N	Help         Controller Information         Reply Type         Parameter Overview         Synchronization         Booting the Sensor         Querying the Controller Temperature         Changing the User Level         Changing to User Level         Defining a Standard User         Changing the Password         Info about Calibration Tables         Sensor Number         Sensor Number         Sensor Information         Dark Correction         Varning Threshold in the Event of Contamination         ight Correction         Sensor Type         "rigger Type         "fight Correction         Settings Encoder Trigger Input         "rigger Level         Software Trigger Pulse         Settings Encoder Triggering         Encoder Interpolation Depth         Effect of the Reference Track         Incoder Value         Setting Encoder Value per Software	102 102 105 105 105 105 105 105 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 106 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107 107

		A 7.3.6.2 Setting for Ethernet Measured Value Transfering	110
		A 7.3.6.3 Setting RS422 Baud Rate	110
	A 7.3.7	A 7.3.6.4 Change Ethernet / EtherCAT Parameter Management, Load / Save Settings	110
	A 1.3.1	A 7.3.7.1 Save Parameter	111
		A 7.3.7.2 Load Parameter	
• - •		A 7.3.7.3 Default Settings	111
A 7.4	Measuren A 7.4.1	ents	
	A 7.4.1	General A 7.4.1.1 Measurement Mode	
		A 7.4.1.2 Peak Selection	
		A 7.4.1.3 Exposure Mode	112
		A 7.4.1.4 Measuring Rate	112
		A 7.4.1.5 Exposure Time A 7.4.1.6 Apply Exposure Time	112
		A 7.4.1.7 Video Signal Request	112
	A 7.4.2	Video Signal	112
		A 7.4.2.1 Reduction of Region of Interest	112
		A 7.4.2.2 Video Averaging A 7.4.2.3 Peak Detection Threshold	112
	A 7.4.3	A 7.4.2.3 Peak Detection Threshold Material Data Base	
	A 7.4.0	A 7.4.3.1 Material Table	
		A 7.4.3.2 Select Material	113
		A 7.4.3.3 Display Material Properties	113
		A 7.4.3.4 Edit Material Table	
	A 7.4.4	A 7.4.3.5 Delete a Material Number of Peaks, Material Settings Multilayer Measurements	114
	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	A 7.4.4.1 Number of Peaks and Enabling/Disabling Refractive Correction	114
		A 7.4.4.2 Material Settings	114
	A 7.4.5	Measurement Value Processing	114
		A 7.4.5.1 Averaging of Measurement Value A 7.4.5.2 Spike Correction	114
		A 7.4.5.3 Selection of the Signal for the Statistics, Multilayer Measurement	114
		A 7.4.5.3 Selection of the Signal for the Statistics, Multilayer Measurement A 7.4.5.4 Setting the Statistics Calculation	114
		A 7.4.5.5 Reset the Statistics Calculation	115
		A 7.4.5.6 Selection of the Signal for the Mastering / Zero Setting, Multilayer Measureme	ent 115
A 7.5	Data Outr	A 7.4.5.7 Setting Masters / Zerout.	
A 1.0	A 7.5.1	General	
		A 7.5.1.1 Selection Digital Output	115
		A 7.5.1.2 Output Data Rate	115
	A 7.5.2	A 7.5.1.3 Error Processing Select Measurement Values to be Output	115
	A 7.5.2	A 7.5.2.1 Data Selection Displacement Measurement for RS422 / Ethernet	116
		A 7.5.2.2 Data Selection Thickness Measurement for RS422 / Ethernet	116
		A 7.5.2.3 Data Selection Statistic Values for RS422 and Ethernet	117
		A 7.5.2.4 Data Selection Optional Values for RS422 and Ethernet	117
		A 7.5.2.5 Switching on output of non linearized distances A 7.5.2.6 Set Video Output	117
	A 7.5.3	Switching Outputs	
		A 7.5.3.1 Error Switching Outputs	118
		A 7.5.3.2 Limit Values	
	A 7 E 4	A 7.5.3.3 Switching Level	
	A 7.5.4	Analog Output A 7.5.4.1 Data Selection	119
		A 7.5.4.2 Output Range	119
		A 7.5.4.3 Two-Point Scaling	119
A 7.6		Value Format	
	A 7.6.1 A 7.6.2	Video Signal Exposure Time	
	A 7.6.3	Measuring rate	
	A 7.6.4	Encoder	121
	A 7.6.5	Measured Value Counter	
	A 7.6.6 A 7.6.7	Time Stamp Measurement Data (Displacements and Intensities)	122
	A 7.6.8	Trigger Time Difference	122
	A 7.6.9	Error Status	123
	A 7.6.10	Differences (Thicknesses)	124
A 7.7	A 7.6.11	Statistic Values	124
A /./	A 7.7.1	ent Data Format Data Format RS422 Interface	124
	A 7.7.2	Measurement Data Transmission to a Measurement Value Server via Ethernet	125
		A 7.7.2.1 Description Flags1	126
		A 7.7.2.2 Description Flags2	126
	A 7.7.3	A 7.7.2.3 Error Codes Ethernet Interface Ethernet Video Signal Transmission	127
A 7.8		nd Error Messages	
	-	-	
A 8		۲ Documentation	
A 8.1	Preamble		131

A 9	Operating Menu	172
A 8.8	EtherCAT Configuration with the Beckhoff TwinCAT© Manager	
A 8.7	Meaning of STATUS-LED in EtherCAT Operation	
A 8.6	Oversampling	
	A 8.5.6 Setting Regardless of TwinCat	
	A 8.5.5 Apply Selected Settings	
	A 8.5.4 Slave	
	A 8.5.3 Synchronization off	
	A 8.5.2 Synchronization	
,	A 8.5.1 Introduction	
A 8.5	Distributed Clock	
	A 8.4.2.2 Video Signal Output via Process Data	158
	A 8.4.2.1 Video Signal Output via Service Data Object	156
	A 8.4.2 Video Signal	
A 0.4	A 8.4.1 Measured Values	
A 8.4	Measurement Data Formats	
A 8.3	Error Codes for SDO Services.	155
	A 8.2.2 Manufacturer Specific Objects	
A 0.2	CoE – Object Directory A 8.2.1 Communication Specific Standard Objects (CiA DS-301)	
A 8.2		
	A 8.1.7 Process Data PDO Mapping A 8.1.8 Service Data SDO Service	
	A 8.1.6 CANopen over EtherCAT	
	A 8.1.5 EtherCAT State Machine	
	A 8.1.4 Sync Manager	
	A 8.1.3 Addressing and FMMUs	
	A 8.1.2 EtherCAT® Services	
	A 8.1.1 Structure of EtherCAT®-Frames	

## 1. Safety

System operation assumes knowledge of the operating instructions.

## 1.1 Symbols Used

The following symbols are used in these operating instructions:

	Indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury.
NOTICE	Indicates a situation that may result in property damage if not avoided.
	Indicates a user action.
i	Indicates a tip for users.
Measure	Indicates hardware or a software button/menu.

## 1.2 Warnings

Do not open the external Xenon light source IFX2471.

> Risk of burns; high voltage

Connect the power supply and the display/output device according to the safety regulations for electrical equipment.

- > Risk of injury
- > Damage to or destruction of the controller and the light source

NOTICE

The supply voltage must not exceed the specified limits.

> Damage to or destruction of the controller or the light source

Avoid shocks and impacts to the controller, the sensor and the external light source.

> Damage to or destruction of the components

Do not allow optical fibers to twist or bend tightly.

> Damage to or destruction of the optical fibers; failure of the measurement device

Protect the ends of the fiber optics against contamination (use protective caps).

- > Incorrect measurement
- > Failure of the measuring device

Do not cover the ventilation slots on the top and bottom of the external light source.

> Damage to external light source, or light source switches off automatically

Protect the cables against damage.

> Failure of the measuring device

## 1.3 Notes on CE Marking

The following apply to the confocalDT 2451/2461/2471 measuring system:

- EU Directive 2014/30/EU
- EU Directive 2011/65/EU

Products which carry the CE mark satisfy the requirements of the EU directives cited and the relevant applicable harmonized European standards (EN). The measuring system is designed for use in industrial and residential applications.

The EU Declaration of Conformity is available to the responsible authorities according to EU Directive, article 10.

## 1.4 Intended Use

- The confocalDT 2451/2461/2471 is designed for use in industrial and residential applications. It is used for
  - measuring displacement, distance, profile, thickness and surface inspection
  - monitoring quality and checking dimensions
- The system must only be operated within the limits specified in the technical data, see 2.6.
- The system must be used in such a way that no persons are endangered or machines and other material goods are damaged in the event of malfunction or total failure of the controller.
- Take additional precautions for safety and damage prevention in case of safety-related applications.

#### 1.5 Proper Environment

<ul> <li>Protection class sensor:</li> </ul>	IP40 IP 65, see 2.6
- Protection class controller:	IP40
- Protection class external light source:	IP40

Optical inputs are excluded from protection class. Contamination leads to impairment or failure of the function.

- Temperature range
  - Operation:

Sensor:	+5 +70 °C (+41 +158 °F)
Controller:	+5 +50 °C (+41 +122 °F)
<ul> <li>External light source:</li> </ul>	+5 +40 °C (+41 +104 °F)
Storage:	-20 +70 °C (-4 +158 °F)
- Humidity:	5 95 % (non-condensing)
- Ambient pressure:	Atmospheric pressure

- EMC: According to EN 61000-6-3 / EN 61326-1 (Class B) and EN 61 000-6-2 / EN 61326-1

# 2. Functional Principle, Technical Data

## 2.1 Short Description

The confocalDT 2451/2461/2471LED measuring system includes

- one sensor,
- one controller IFC2451, IFC2461 or IFC2471LED
- one optical fiber (optic cable).

The confocalDT 2471 measuring system includes

- one sensor,
- one controller (IFC2471) for the external light source,
- one Xenon light source (IFX2471),
- two optical fibers (optic cable).

The external light source IFX2471 is required to operate the controller IFC2471 at high measuring rates. The controller IFC2451, IFC2461 and IFC2471LED comes with an integrated white light LED as an internal light source.

The sensor is completely passive as it contains no heat sources or moving parts. This prevents any heat-related expansion, and ensures high precision of the measuring system.

The external light source feeds the sensor through the controller. The controller uses a spectrometer to convert any light signals that it receives from the sensor. It then calculates distance values using the integrated signal processor (CPU) and transfers the data via its interfaces or analog outputs.

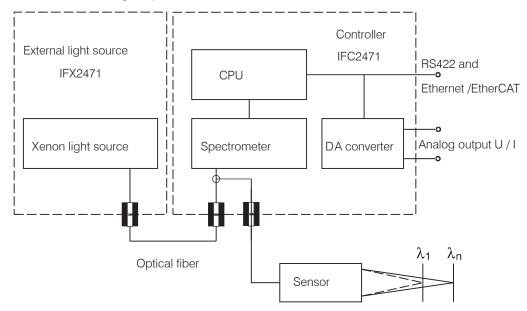


Fig. 1 Block diagram confocalDT 2471

## 2.2 Measuring Principle

The sensor projects polychromatic light (white light) to the target surface. The sensor lenses are designed to use controlled chromatic aberration to focus each light wavelength at a specific distance. In reverse, the sensor will then receive the light that is reflected from the target surface and transfer it to the controller. This is followed by the spectral analysis, and then the data stored in the controller are used to calculate the distances.

 $\overset{\bullet}{l}$  Sensor and controller are one unit, as the sensor's linearization table is stored in the controller.

This unique measuring system allows for highly precise measurement of applications. It is possible to measure both diffuse and reflecting surfaces. For transparent layered materials, thickness measurements can be conducted in addition to distance measurements. Shadowing is avoided because sender and receiver are aligned along one axis.

The excellent resolution and the small beam spot diameter make it possible to measure surface structures. However, measurement deviations may occur if the structure is of a similar size to the beam spot diameter or if the maximum tilt angle is exceeded (for example, with groove edges).

### 2.3 Glossary

- SMR Start of measuring range. Minimum distance between sensor surface and target
- MMR Mid of measuring range
- EMR End of measuring range (start of measuring range + measuring range) Maximum distance between sensor face and target
- MR Measuring range

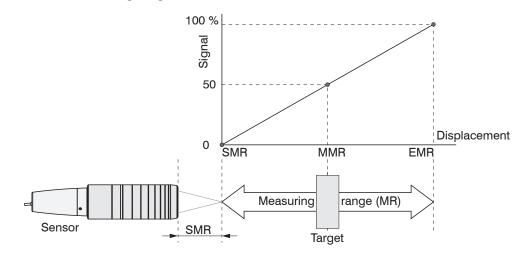


Fig. 2 Measuring range and output signal at the controller

## 2.4 Operating Modes

- Distance measurement for reflecting (mirroring and diffuse) surfaces,
- thickness measurement of transparent objects

covering ranges between just a few tenths of a micrometer to several millimetres.

#### 2.5 Sensors

The controller can be operated with up to 20 different sensors. The required calibration tables are stored within the controller.

The sensor is a passive element in the measuring system: it contains neither moving nor heat-generating parts which might affect measuring accuracy due to thermal expansion in the sensor.

 $\stackrel{\bullet}{l}$  Protect the ends of the sensor cables (optical fibers) and the sensor lens from dirt and contamination.

## 2.6 Technical Data

Model	IFS	2402-0,4	IFS2402-0,5	2402-1,5	2402-4	2402-10	2402/90-1,5	2402/90-4	2402/90-10	
Measuring range		0.4 mm	0.5 mm	1.5 mm	3.5 mm	6.5 mm	1.5 mm	2.5 mm	6.5 mm	
Start of measuring range	approx.	1.5 mm	1.7 mm	0.9 mm	1.9 mm	2.5 mm	2.5 mm <sup>1</sup>	2.5 mm <sup>1</sup>	3.5 mm <sup>1</sup>	
Resolution	static <sup>2</sup>	16 nm	16 nm	60 nm	100 nm	200 nm	60 nm	100 nm	200 nm	
	dynamic <sup>3</sup>	48 nm	48 nm	192 nm	480 nm	960 nm	192 nm	480 nm	960 nm	
Linearity <sup>4</sup> Displacement distance	and	<±0.3 µm	< ±0.2 µm	<±1.2 µm	<±3 µm	<±13 µm	<±1.2 µm	$<\pm3\mu{ m m}$	<±13 µm	
Light spot diameter		10 <i>µ</i> m	10 <i>µ</i> m	20 µm	20 µm	100 µm	20 µm	20µm	100 <i>µ</i> m	
Max. tilt angle <sup>5</sup>		±8°	±18°	±5°	±3°	±1.5°	±5°	±3°	±1.5°	
Numerical aperture		0.25	0.40	0.20	0.10	0.10	0.20	0.10	0.10	
Connection		integrated optical fiber 2 m with E2000/APC connector; extension up to 50 m; bending radius: static 30 mm, dynamic 40 mm								
Installation		Clamping, mounting adapter (see accessories)								
Temperature	Storage	-20 +70 °C (-4 +158 °F)								
range	Operation			+5	. +70 °C (	+41 +1	58 °F)			
Shock (DIN-EN 60068-2-2	27)	15 g / 6 ms in XY axis, 1000 shocks each								
Vibration (DIN-EN 60068-		2 (	g / 20 Hz	500 Hz ir	n XY axis, 1	0 cycles each	ו			
Protection class (DIN-EN	60529)		IP64 (fr	ont operate	d)			IP40		
Material				Stainles	s steel ho	using, glas	s lenses			
Weight				appro	x. 186 g (	incl. optica	l fiber)			

Model	IFS	2403-0,4	2403-1,5	2403-4	2403-10	2403/90-1,5	2403/90-4	2403/90-10	
Measuring range		0.4 mm	1.5 mm	4 mm	10 mm	1.5 mm	4 mm	10 mm	
Start of measuring range	approx.	2.5 mm	8.0 mm	14.7 mm	11 mm	4.9 mm <sup>1</sup>	12 mm <sup>1</sup>	8.6 mm <sup>1</sup>	
Resolution	static <sup>2</sup>	16 nm	60 nm	100 nm	250 nm	60 nm	100 nm	250 nm	
	dynamic <sup>3</sup>	47 nm	186 nm	460 nm	1250 nm	186 nm	460 nm	1250 nm	
Linearity <sup>4</sup> Displacement	and distance	$<\pm0.3\mu m$	<±1.2 µm	<±3 µm	<±20 µm	<±1.2 µm	<±3 µm	<±20 µm	
Linearity	Thickness	<±0.6 µm	<±2.4 µm	<±6µm	<±40 µm	<±2.4 µm	<±6µm	<±40 µm	
Light spot diameter		9 µm	15 <i>µ</i> m	28 µm	56 µm	15 µm	28 µm	56 µm	
Max. tilt angle <sup>5</sup>		±20°	±16°	±6°	±6°	±16°	±6°	±6°	
Numerical aperture		0.5	0.3	0.15	0.15	0.3	0.15	0.15	
Min. target thickness 6		0.06 mm	0.23 mm	0.6 mm	1.5 mm	0.23 mm	0.6 mm	1.5 mm	
Connection		integrated optical fiber 2 m with E2000/APC connector; extension up to 50 m; bending radius: static 30 mm, dynamic 40 mm							
Installation			Clar	mping, mour	iting adapter	(see accesso	ries)		
Temperature	Storage	-20 +70 °C (-4 +158 °F)							
range	Operation	+5 +70 °C (+41 +158 °F)							
Shock (DIN-EN 60068-2-27	7)	15 g / 6 ms in XY in XY axis, 1000 shocks each							
Vibration (DIN-EN 60068-2-	-6)		2 g /	20 Hz 50	0 Hz in XY a	(is, 10 cycles (	each		
Protection class (DIN-EN 6	0529)		IP64 (front	operated)			IP40		
Material				Stainless st	eel housing,	glass lenses			
Weight				approx. 2	00 g (incl. oj	otical fiber)			

1) Start of measuring range measured from sensor axis.

2) Average from 512 values at 1 kHz, near to the midrange onto optical flat

3) RMS noise relates to mid of measuring range (1 kHz)

4) All data at constant ambient temperature (25  $\pm$ 1 °C) against optical flat; specifications can change when measuring different materials.

5) Maximum sensor tilt angle that produces a usable signal on reflecting surfaces. The accuracy decreases when approaching the limit values.

6) Glass with refractive index n = 1.5 in midrange

Model	IFS	<b>240</b> 4	-2	2404/90-2	2	2404-2(00	1)	2404/90-	2(001)
Measuring range	Iring range			2 mm	n 2 mm			2 mm	
Start of measuring range	approx	. 14 m	ım	9.6 mm <sup>1</sup>	l	14 mm		9.6 mm <sup>1</sup>	
	static <sup>2</sup>	<sup>2</sup> 40 nm 40 nm				40 nm		40 nm	
Resolution	dynamic		าm	125 nm		125 nm		125 nm	
Displacement	-		μm	<±1 µm		<±1µm	1	<±1	μm
Linearity <sup>4</sup>	Thickness	s <±2	μm	<±2µm	1	<±2µm	1	<±2	μm
Light spot diameter		10 µ	<i>ı</i> m	10 <i>µ</i> m		10 <i>µ</i> m		10 µ	ım
Max. tilt angle <sup>5</sup>		±1		±12°		±12°		±12	
Numerical aperture		0.2		0.25		0.25		0.2	
Min. target thickness <sup>6</sup>	0.1 n		0.1 mm		0.1 mm		0.1 m		
			•	via FC socket th 2 m; extens		pluggable o standard lengt	•		
Connection			•	lius: static 30 r	• •	-	g radius: s		
		10 00 111,	dynamic 4		,		lynamic 4		,
Installation				amping, mour	nting ada				
<b></b>	Storage	e		-20	+70 °C (-	4 +158 °F)			
Temperature range	Operation					41 +158 °F)	)		
Shock (DIN-EN 60068-2-27	7)			15 g / 6 ms in	XY axis,	1000 shocks	each		
Vibration (DIN-EN 60068-2			2 0	) / 20 Hz 50					
Protection class (DIN-EN 6	,	IP65 (front operated)							
Material	/	Stainless steel housing, glass lenses							
Weight		approx	20 g	approx. 30		approx. 40		approx. 50 g	
			I	1	1		1	1	1
Model		2405-0,3	2405-1	2405-3	2405-6	5 <b>2405/90-6</b>	2405-10	2405-28	2405-30
Measuring range		0.3 mm	1 mm	3 mm	6 mm	6 mm	10 mm	28 mm	30 mm
Start of measuring range	approx.	6 mm	10 mm	20 mm	63 mm	1 41 mm <sup>1</sup>	50 mm	220 mm	100 mm
	static <sup>2</sup>	4 nm	28 nm	60 nm	18 nm	18 nm	60 nm	250 nm	300 nm
Resolution	dynamic <sup>3</sup>	20 nm	52 nm	126 nm	93 nm	93 nm	386 nm	1420 nm	1040 nm
Displacemer Linearity <sup>4</sup>	nt and	<±0.15 µm	<±0.25 µm	$  < \pm 0.75  \mu m$	<±1.5 µ	$\mu m = \frac{1.5}{\mu m}$	<±2.5 µm	<±7.0 μm	<±7.5 μm
Linearity	Thickness	$<\pm0.3\mu{ m m}$	<±0.5 µm	<±1.5 µm	<±3 µ	m < ±3μm	<±5 µm	<±14 µm	<±15 µm
Light spot diameter		6 µm	8 µm	9 <i>µ</i> m	31 µm	1 31 μm	16 µm	, 60 μm	, 50 μm
•		. 0.40				1 1 <b>0</b> °	±17°	±5°	±9°
iviax. tiit angle ~		±34°	±30°	±24°	±10°	±10°	<u> </u>		
Max. tilt angle <sup>3</sup> Numerical aperture		±34° 0.6	±30° 0.55	±24° 0.45	±10° 0.22	0.22	0.3	0.1	0.2
						0.22			0.2 1.5 mm
Numerical aperture		0.6 0.015 mm	0.55 0.05 mm pluggab	0.45 0.15 mm le optical fiber	0.22 0.3 mn via FC s	0.22 n 0.3 mm ocket; standa	0.3 0.5 mm rd length 3	0.1 2.2 mm 3 m;	
Numerical aperture Min. target thickness <sup>6</sup> Connection		0.6 0.015 mm	0.55 0.05 mm pluggab ttension up t	0.45 0.15 mm le optical fiber to 50 m; bendi	0.22 0.3 mn via FC s ing radiu	0.22 n 0.3 mm ocket; standa s: static 30 mr	0.3 0.5 mm rd length 3 n, dynami	0.1 2.2 mm 3 m;	
Numerical aperture Min. target thickness <sup>6</sup> Connection Installation	Storage	0.6 0.015 mm ex	0.55 0.05 mm pluggab ttension up t	0.45 0.15 mm le optical fiber to 50 m; bendi amping, moun	0.22 0.3 mn via FC s ing radius	0.22 n 0.3 mm ocket; standa s: static 30 mr	0.3 0.5 mm rd length 3 n, dynami	0.1 2.2 mm 3 m;	
Numerical aperture Min. target thickness <sup>6</sup> Connection	Storage	0.6 0.015 mm ex	0.55 0.05 mm pluggab ttension up t	0.45 0.15 mm le optical fiber to 50 m; bendi amping, moun -20 +	0.22 0.3 mm via FC s ing radius ting adap	0.22 n 0.3 mm ocket; standar s: static 30 mr oter (see acce	0.3 0.5 mm rd length 3 n, dynami	0.1 2.2 mm 3 m;	
Numerical aperture Min. target thickness <sup>6</sup> Connection Installation	Operation	0.6 0.015 mm ex	0.55 0.05 mm pluggab tension up t Cla	0.45 0.15 mm le optical fiber to 50 m; bendi amping, moun -20 +	0.22 0.3 mn via FC s ing radiu: ting adaµ -70 °C (-4	0.22 n 0.3 mm ocket; standar s: static 30 mr oter (see acce 4 +158 °F) h1 +158 °F)	0.3 0.5 mm rd length 3 n, dynami ssories)	0.1 2.2 mm 3 m;	
Numerical aperture Min. target thickness <sup>6</sup> Connection Installation Temperature range	Operation 7)	0.6 0.015 mm ex	0.55 0.05 mm pluggab tension up t Cla	0.45 0.15 mm le optical fiber to 50 m; bendi amping, moun -20 + +5 +7 15 g / 6 ms in	0.22 0.3 mm via FC s ing radiu: ting adap -70 °C (-4 70 °C (+4 XY axis,	0.22 n 0.3 mm ocket; standar s: static 30 mr oter (see acce 4 +158 °F) 1000 shocks of	0.3 0.5 mm rd length 3 n, dynami ssories) each	0.1 2.2 mm 3 m;	
Numerical aperture Min. target thickness <sup>6</sup> Connection Installation Temperature range Shock (DIN-EN 60068-2-27	Operation 7) -6)	0.6 0.015 mm ex	0.55 0.05 mm pluggab tension up t Cla	0.45 0.15 mm le optical fiber to 50 m; bendi amping, moun -20 + +5 +7 15 g / 6 ms in / 20 Hz 500	0.22 0.3 mm via FC s ing radiu: ting adap -70 °C (-4 70 °C (+4 XY axis,	0.22 n 0.3 mm ocket; standar s: static 30 mr oter (see acce 4 +158 °F) 11 +158 °F) 1000 shocks of Y axis, 10 cycl	0.3 0.5 mm rd length 3 n, dynami ssories) each	0.1 2.2 mm 3 m;	
Numerical aperture Min. target thickness <sup>6</sup> Connection Installation Temperature range Shock (DIN-EN 60068-2-27 Vibration (DIN-EN 60068-2	Operation 7) -6)	0.6 0.015 mm ex	0.55 0.05 mm pluggab tension up t Cla	0.45 0.15 mm le optical fiber to 50 m; bendi amping, moun -20 + +5 +7 15 g / 6 ms in / 20 Hz 500	0.22 0.3 mm via FC s ing radius ting adap -70 °C (-4 70 °C (+4 XY axis, 0 Hz in X 4 (front o	0.22 n 0.3 mm ocket; standar s: static 30 mr oter (see acce 4 +158 °F) 11 +158 °F) 1000 shocks of Y axis, 10 cycl	0.3 0.5 mm rd length 3 n, dynami ssories) each es each	0.1 2.2 mm 3 m;	

1) Start of measuring range measured from sensor axis.

2) Average from 512 values at 1 kHz, near to the midrange onto optical flat

3) RMS noise relates to mid of measuring range (1 kHz)

4) All data at constant ambient temperature (25  $\pm$ 1 °C) against optical flat; specifications can change when measuring different objects.

5) Maximum sensor tilt angle that produces a usable signal on reflecting surfaces. The accuracy decreases when approaching the limit values.

6) Glass with refractive index n = 1.5 throughout the entire measuring range. In the mid of the measuring range, also thinner layers can be measured.

confocalDT 24x1

Model	IFS	2406-2,5/VAC(003)	2406/90-2,5/ VAC(001)	2406-3	2406-10	2406-3/VAC(001)		
Measuring range	Measuring range		2.5 mm		10 mm	3 mm		
Start of measuring range	approx.	17.2 mm 12.6 mm <sup>1</sup>		75 mm	27 mm	75 mm		
Desclution	static <sup>2</sup>	24 ni	50 nm	60 nm	50 nm			
Resolution dynamic <sup>3</sup>		106 n	ım	168 nm	385 nm	168 nm		
Displacer	ment and distance	<± 0.75	5μm	<± 1.5 µm	<± 2.5 μm	< ±1.5 µm		
	hickness	<± 1.5	μm	<± 3.0 µm	<± 5 µm	< ±3.0 µm		
Light spot diameter		10 <i>µ</i> ı	m	35 µm	15 <i>µ</i> m	35 µm		
Max. tilt angle <sup>5</sup>		±16	0	±6.5°	±13.5°	±6.5°		
Numerical aperture		0.3	0.14	0.25	0.14			
Min. target thickness <sup>6</sup>		0.125 r	0.15 mm	0.5 mm	0.15 mm			
Connection		pluggable optical fiber via FC socket, type C240x-x (01); stan- dard length 3 m; extension up to 50 m; bending radius: static 30 mm, dynamic 40 mm mm						
Installation		Clamping, mounting adapter (see accessories)						
Temperature	Storage		-20	+70 °C (-4 +	158 °F)			
range C	Operation	+5 +70 °C (+41 +158 °F)						
Shock (DIN-EN 60068-2-2	?7)		15 g / 6 ms i	n XY axis, 1000	shocks ead	ch		
Vibration (DIN-EN 60068-2	2-6)		2 g / 20 Hz 5	00 Hz in XY axis	, 10 cycles	each		
Protection class (DIN-EN	60529)	IP40 (vacuum c	ompatibale)	IP65 (front op	perated)	IP40 (vacuum compatibale)		
Material		Stainless steel hous	Stainless steel housing, glass lenses			Stainless steel housing (1.4305), glass lenses		
Weight		approx. 105 g	approx. 130 g	approx. 99 g	approx. 128 g	approx. 250 g		

Model	IFS	2407-0,1	2407-0,1(001)	2407-0,8	2407/90-0,3	2407-3	
Measuring range		0.1 mm		0.8 mm	0.3 mm	3 mm	
Start of measuring range	approx.	1 mm		5.9 mm	5.3 mm	28 mm	
	static <sup>2</sup>	3	nm	24 nm	10 nm	20 nm	
Resolution			20 nm	58 nm			
Displace	ment and distance	<±(	).05 μm	< ±0.2 µm	<±0.15 µm	$<\pm0.75\mu{ m m}$	
	Thickness	<±	0.1 <i>µ</i> m	< ±0.4 µm	<±0.3 µm	<±1.5 µm	
Light spot diameter		3 <i>µ</i> m	4 <i>µ</i> m	6 <i>µ</i> m	6 <i>µ</i> m	9 µm	
Max. tilt angle <sup>5</sup>		±48°	±48°	±30°	±27°	±30°	
Numerical aperture		0.8	0.7	0.50	0.5	0.53	
Min. target thickness <sup>6</sup>		0.005 mm 0.04 mm			0.015 mm	0.15 mm	
Connection		bending radius: static 30 mm,			type C2407-x;	bending radius: static	
(pluggable optical fiber vi	a FC	dynamic 40 mm			bending radius: static	30 mm, dynamic 40 mm	
socket; length 3 m, exten	sion up				30 mm,		
to 50 m)					dynamic 40 mm		
Installation		Clam	ping, mounting ac	dapter	Mounting holes (2x M2)	Clamping, mounting adapter	
	Storage	-20 +70 °C (-4 +158 °F)					
Temperature range	Opera- tion			+5 +70 °C (	(+41 +158 °F)		
Shock (DIN-EN 60068-2-2	27)	15 g / 6 ms in XY axis, 1000 shocks each					
Vibration (DIN-EN 60068-2-6)		2 g / 20 Hz 500 Hz axis, 10 cycles each					
Protection class (DIN-EN 60529)		IP65 (front operated)					
Material		Stainless steel housing, glass lenses Aluminium, g			Aluminium, glass lenses		
Weight		appr	ox. 36 g	approx. 40 g	approx. 30 g	approx. 550 g	
Features		high numeri- cal aperture	Light-intensive sensor		-	-	

Controller		IFC2451	IFC2451MP	IFC2461	IFC2461MP	IFC2471LED	IFC2471MP LED	
Multi peak measuren	nent	2 peaks	up to 6 peaks	2 peaks	up to 6 peaks	2 peaks	up to 6 peaks	
Light source			1	interna	I white LED		1	
Measuring rate		adjustable 10 / 5 / 2.5 / 1 / 0.3 / 0.2 / 0.1 kHz		adjustable 25 / 10 / 5 / 2.5 / 1 / 0.3 / 0.2 / 0.1 kHz		adjustable 70 / 50 / 25 / 10 / 5 / 2.5 / 1 / 0.1 kHz		
Measuring rate	_	variable 10 0.1 kHz,		variable 25	0.1 kHz,	variable 70 0.1 kHz,		
		step siz	e 100 Hz	step size	e 100 Hz	step s	ize 100 Hz	
	Ethernet / EtherCAT			1	l nm			
Resolution	RS422	18 bit						
	Analogue	-						
Storage			up to 20 calibr	ation tables for	different sensor	rs, menu select	ion	
				sync-in / trig	ger-in, sync-out	t		
				error1-ou	ut, error2-out			
				encoder (3	3x A, B, Index)			
Controller inputs / ou	itputs			EtherCA	AT/Ethernet			
				R	S422			
		analogue: current, voltage (16bit D/A converter)						
EtherCAT		EtherCAT. EtherCAT.						
		On/Off switch; Button for dark alignment (as well as for reset to factory setting after 10 s)						
Operating elements,	controller display	4x LED for intensity, range, status, supply voltage						
Supply voltage,					15 %, ~10 W			
power consumption								
Housing			A	luminium case	for DIN rail mou	nting		
Protection class		IP 40						
Operating temperatu	ire	5 ℃ up to 50 ℃						
Storage temperature	•	-20 °C up to 70 °C						
Safety; EMC		CE						
Interference emission	n	EN 61 000-6-3 / DIN EN 61326-1 (class B)						
Interference resistan	се	EN 61 000-6-2 / DIN EN 61326-1						
Shock		15 g, 6 ms						
Vibration		2 g / 10 Hz 500 Hz						
Optical fiber cable	sensor							
length	connector			E	2000			
	EtherCAT, Ethernet			CAT5E; le	ngth < 100 m	·		
Cable length (all cables are	supply, RS422, sync./error	< 30 m						
shielded)	analogue	e < 30 m						
	encoder							

Controller		IFC2471	IFC2471MP		
Multi peak measurem	nent	2 peaks	up to 6 peaks		
Light source		external xenon light source IFX2471			
Measuring rate		adjustable 70 / 50 / 25 / 10 / 5 / 2.5 / 1 / 0.3 kHz variable 70 0.3 kHz, step size 100 Hz			
	Ethernet / EtherCAT	1 r	im		
Resolution	RS422	18	bit		
	Analogue	16	bit		
Storage		up to 20 calibration tables for different sensors, menu selection			
		sync-in / trigge	er-in, sync-out		
		error1-out,	error2-out		
		encoder (3x	A, B, Index)		
		EtherCAT	/Ethernet		
Controller inputs / ou	tputs	RS4	122		
		analogue: cu (16bit D/A	rrent, voltage converter)		
		IFX2471: temperature, light-bulb exchange			
EtherCAT		EtherCAT			
Operating elements,	controller display	On/Off switch; Button for dark alignment (as well as for reset to factory setting after 10 s)			
operating elements,		4x LED for intensity, range, status, supply voltage			
Supply voltage,	controller	24 VDC ±1	5 %, ~10 W		
power consumption	external light source	90 265 V/	AC, ~100 W		
Housing		Aluminium case for	<sup>r</sup> DIN rail mounting		
Protection class		IP	40		
Operating	controller	5 °C up	to 50 °C		
Operating temperature	external light	5 °C up to 40 °C			
Storage temperature	source	-20 °C up			
Safety; EMC		-20 C up			
Interference emission		EN 61 000-6-3 / DIN I	—		
Interference resistance		EN 61 000-6-2 /			
Shock	,c	EN 61 000-6-27 15 g,			
Vibration		2 g / 10 Hz			
	sensor	2 - 5			
Optical fiber cable	xenon light source	1			
length	connector	E20			
	EtherCAT, Ethernet	CAT5E; leng			
Cable leasth		UATSE, IEIIQ			
Cable length (all cables are	supply, RS422, sync./error				
shielded)	analogue	ue < 30 m			
	encoder	< 3 m			

## 3. Delivery

## 3.1 Unpacking, Included in Delivery

1 Controller

IFC2451/2461/2471

- 1 Sensor, incl. sensor cable (optical fiber)
- 1 RJ patch cable Cat5 2 m
- 1 Test certificate

## Optional for IFC2471:

- 1 External light source IFX2471
- 1 Power supply cable
- 1 Optical fiber cable for connecting the controller, 1 m
- 1 Status lead (4-pin)
- Carefully remove the components of the measuring system from the packaging and ensure that the goods are forwarded in such a way that no damage can occur.
- Check the delivery for completeness and shipping damage immediately after unpacking.
- If there is damage or parts are missing, immediately contact the manufacturer or supplier.

## 3.2 Storage

Temperature range storage:	-20 +70 °C (-4 +158 °F)
Humidity:	5 95 % (non-condensing)

## 4. Assembly

#### 4.1 Controller IFC2451/2461/2471

Place the controller IFC2451/2461/2471 on a level surface, or install it at a location of your choice (e.g. in a switch cabinet) using a DIN EN 60715 mounting rail (DIN rail TS35).

When using a DIN rail, an electrical connection (potential equalisation) is established between the controller case and the rail.

To remove, push the controller upwards, and pull it forwards.

 $\overset{\bullet}{l}$  When attaching the controller, ensure that no connections, operating or display elements are covered.

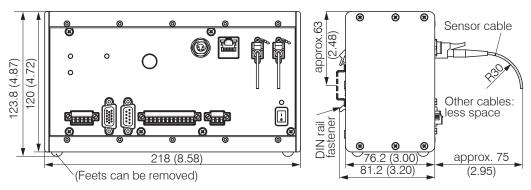
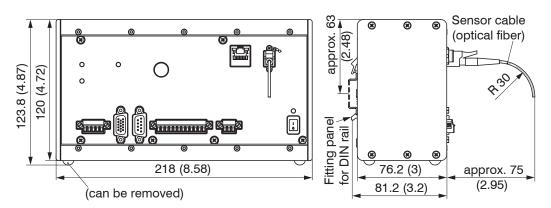


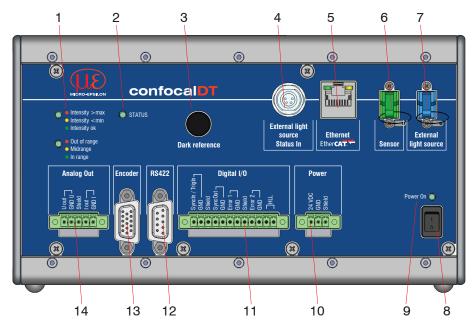
Fig. 3 Dimension drawing of controller IFC2471, dimensions in mm, not to scale



*Fig. 4 Dimension drawing of controller IFC2451/2461/2471LED, dimensions in mm, not to scale* 

## 4.2 External Light Source IFX2471

Like the controller, the external light source IFX2471, see A 3, may be placed onto an even surface or attached to the rear panel using a DIN rail.



## 4.3 Controller Operating Elements

Fig. 5 Front view controller IFC2471 (IFC2451/2461/2471)

1	Intensity, Range LEDs	8	On/off switch
2	Status LED	9	Power On LED
3	Dark reference button <sup>1</sup>	10	Power supply connection
4	Status input for the external light source <sup>2</sup>	11	Digital I/O
5	Ethernet / EtherCAT	12	RS422 connector
6	Sensor connection (optic fibre)	13	Encoder connection
7	External light source <sup>2</sup>	14	Analog out (U / I)

Resetting to factory settings: Press the Dark reference button for more than 10 sec.
 There are no external light source connections on the controller IFC2451/2461 and 2471LED (status in, optic fiber).

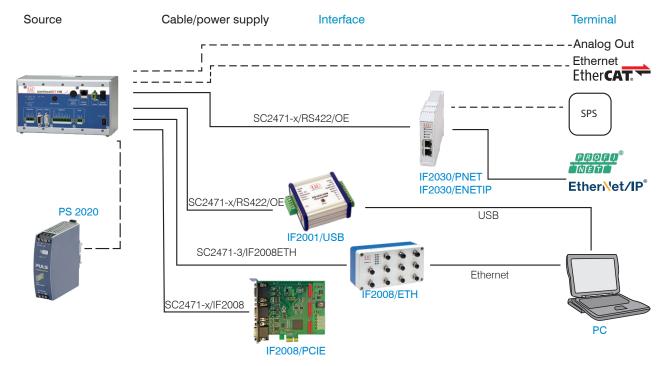
## 4.4 Controller LEDs

[				
Power on	Green	Active supply voltage		
	Off	No errors		
	Flashing red	Processing error		
Status	Red	Error during synchronization		
		If EtherCAT is active, meaning of the LED is conform with the EtherCAT guidelines.		
Intensity	Flashing red	Dark signal acquisition in progress		
🔘 🗕 Intensity > max	Red	Signal in saturation		
<ul> <li>Intensity &lt; min</li> <li>Intensity ok</li> </ul>	Yellow	Signal too low		
	Green	Signal ok		
Range	Flashing red	Dark signal acquisition in progress		
Out of range Midrange	Red	No target object, or target object outside the measuring range		
<ul> <li>In range</li> </ul>	Yellow	Target object near the midrange		
	Green	Target object within the measuring range		

Fig. 6 Description of the controller LEDs

## 4.5 Electrical Controller Connections

## 4.5.1 Connection Options



## Fig. 7 Connection examples for confocalDT24x1

The different periphery devices, see Fig. 7, can be connected by the illustrated connection cables.

Peripheral	Sensor	Power supply	Interface
	channels	converter/modules	
IF2001/USB, RS422-USB converter	1		
IF2030/PNET, IF2030/ENETIP	2	optional available power supply PS2020	RS422
IF2008/ETH	8		R5422
IF2008/PCIE, PCI interface card	5		

## 4.5.2 Handling of Pluggable Screw Terminals

The controller IFC24x1 has three pluggable screw terminals for supply, digital I/O and analog out, which are included as accessories.

- Remove approx. 7 mm of the connecting wire isolation (0.14 ... 1.5 mm<sup>2</sup>).
- Connect the connecting wires.
- Use two captive screws to fix the screw terminals.

1

#### 4.5.3 Supply Voltage (Power)

- 3-pin pluggable screw terminal (24 VDC, GND, Shield),
- 24 VDC ± 15 %, I <sub>max</sub> <1A
- not electrically isolated, GND is electrically connected to the GND wiring for switching outputs, synchronization and encoder input.
- Use a shielded cable of less than 30 m.

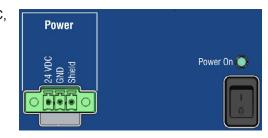


Fig. 8 Supply connection, switch and LED on the controller IFC2451/2461/2471

When the supply voltage has been connected, the Power On LED lights up.

#### 4.5.4 RS422

- Differential signals in accordance with EIA-422, electrically isolated from the supply voltage.
- Receiver Rx with a 120 ohm internal terminating resistor.
- On the evaluation unit (receiver), terminate the transmitter input (Tx) with 90 ...120 ohm.
- Use a shielded twisted cable of less than 30 m.
- Connect the earth connections.
- The pin assignment for the 9-pin D-
- l sub connector is not standardized.

Pin	Name	Signal	
3	RX -	Receiver -	R\$422
2	RX +	Receiver +	
5	GND422	RS422 ground	
9	TX +	Sender +	
1	TX -	Sender -	
Cover	Shield	Cable shield	

Fig. 9 Pin assignment for the 9-pin D-sub connector (RS422)

## 4.5.5 Ethernet, EtherCAT

Potential isolated RJ45 standard connector for connecting the controller IFC2451/2461/2471

- to an Ethernet network (PC) or
- the EtherCAT bus system (IN-Port).
- Use a shielded Ethernet cable (Cat5E, patch cable, 2 m, included in the delivery, overall cable length less than 100 m to connect controller and network.

Both LEDs on the plug-in connector light up to indicate that the connection was successful and is active.

The measuring device can be configured through the web interface or using ASCII commands (e. g. Telnet), see A 7, or with EtherCAT objects.



Fig. 10 RJ45 connector for Ethernet, EtherCAT

## 4.5.6 Analog Output

The two alternative analog outputs (voltage or current) are connected to the 5-pin screw terminal, and both are electrically isolated from the supply voltage.

**Voltage**: Pin U<sub>out</sub> and Pin GND U,

 $R_i$  approx. 30 ohm,  $R_i > 1$  kOhm,  $C_i \le 10$  nF;

Slew rate (no C<sub>L</sub>, R<sub>L</sub>  $\ge$  1 kOhm) ave. 0.5 V/µs

Slew rate (with C\_L = 10 nF, R\_L  $\geq$  1 kOhm) ave. 0.4 V/  $\mu s$ 

Current: Pin Iout and Pin GND I

 $R_L \le 500 \text{ ohm}, C_L \le 10 \text{ nF};$ 

Slew rate (no C<sub>L</sub>, R<sub>L</sub>) = 500 ohm) ave. 1.6 mA/ $\mu$ s

Slew rate (with  $C_L = 10 \text{ nF}$ ,  $R_L = 500 \text{ ohm}$ ) ave. 0.6 mA/ $\mu$ s

Use a shielded cable of less than 30 m.

Pin 3 (Shield) is connected to the cover.

Alternatively, the following values may be defined for the output range:

Voltage: 0 ... 5 V; 0 ... 10 V; -5 ... +5 V; -10 ... +10 V

Current: 4 ... 20 mA.

Only one reading can be produced as voltage or current.

#### 4.5.7 Switching Outputs (Digital I/O)

The two push-pull switching outputs on the 12-pin pluggable screw terminal are not electrically isolated from the supply voltage.

A bridge between the pins (HLL) defines the logic levels for all I/O and Sync/Trig on the screw terminal:

- with bridge: HLL (high logic level)
- open: LLL (low logic level).

Error out 1: error 1 and GND

Error out 2: error 2 and GND

Cable shield: Shield is connected to the cover. Connect the cable shield.

All GND pins are interconnected, and they are connected to the operating voltage ground.

Use a shielded cable of less than 30 m.

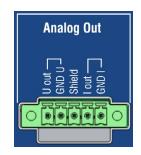


Fig. 11 Analog outputs on the controller

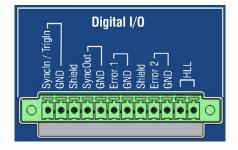


Fig. 12 Digital I/O on the controller

Output level (no load resistance	, LLL: Low 0.2 0.8 V; High 4.5 5 V		
with a supply voltage of 24VDC	HLL: Low 0.2 0.8 V; High 23.5 24 V		
Output resistance	R <sub>i</sub> approx. 90 ohm,		
Load registered, acturation volto	LLL operation: $R_L \ge 100$ ohm; $U_{sat-lo/hi}$ ave. 1.5 V		
Load resistance, saturation voltage	HLL operation: $R_L \ge 2$ kOhm; $U_{sat-lo/hi}$ ave. 1.2 V		

 $U_{sat-lo/hi}$  saturation voltage (with resistance load  $R_L$ ) is measured between output and GND, when output = low, or between output and  $U_B$ , when output = high.

## 4.5.8 Synchronization (Inputs/Outputs)

For the pin assignment of the 12-pin pluggable screw terminal, see Fig. 12.

Pin SyncIn/TrigIn: sync or trigger input Pin GND: ground Pin Shield: cable shield; shield is connected to the cover Pin SyncOut: sync output Pin GND: sync ground

All GND pins are interconnected, and they are connected to the operating voltage ground.

Signal level

SyncOut output level (push-pull, no load resistance), with a supply	LLL: Low 0.2 0.8 V; High 4.5 5 V		
voltage of 24VDC	HLL: Low 0.2 0.8 V; High 23.5 24 V		
Output resistance	R <sub>i</sub> approx. 90 ohm,		
	LLL operation: $R_L \ge 100$ ohm; $U_{sat-lo/hi}$ ave. 1.5 V		
Load resistance, saturation voltage	HLL operation: $R_L \ge 2 \text{ kOhm}$ ; $U_{\text{sat-lo/hi}}$ ave. 1.2 V		

## Syncln / TrigIn

eynoin, mgin		
LLL operation <sup>1</sup>	Low 0 V 0.8 V, High 2 V 5 V	no bridge between the pins (HLL)
HLL operation	Low 0 V 4 V, High 11 V 30 V	bridge between the pins (HLL)
Pulse duration	≥ 5 µs	

#### Star synchronization:

Connect the SyncOut output of controller 1 (master) in star configuration with the SyncIn inputs from controller 2 (slave) to Controller n, in order to synchronize two or more controllers, see Fig. 13.

#### **Cascaded synchronization:**

- Connect the SyncOut output of controller 1 (master) with the SyncIn inputs of controller 2 (slave 1). Connect the SyncIn inputs of downstream controllers in order to synchronize two or more controllers, see Fig. 13.
- Use a shielded cable. Partial cable length less than 30 m with star synchronization, total cable length less than 30 m with cascaded synchronization. Connect the cable shield to 'Shield'.

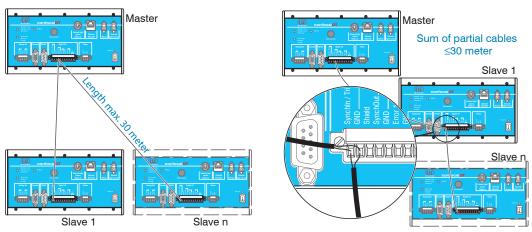


Fig. 13 Synchronization of more controllers, star synchronization (left), cascaded (right)

The number of connectable slaves is limited by the maximum permissible load capacitance CL at the sync output of the master. CL consists of the cable capacity (typ. 0.1 nF / m with twisted wires) and the input capacity of the slaves (Cin typ.1 nF).

CLmax at 100 Hz10 kHz	80 nF	CLmax at 50 kHz	15 nF
CLmax at 25 kHz	30 nF	CLmax at 70 kHz	10 nF

1) Use the LLL operation if possible to reduce the power dissipation of the driver IC.

Total cable length [m] f = 100 Hz ... 10 kHz f = 25 kHzf = 50 kHz= 70 kHz 19 20 Number of slaves

Depending on these conditions, the maximum number of controllers to be synchronized or the permitted total cable length can be determined graphically for synchronization, see Fig. 14.

Fig. 14 Influence of the measuring rate on synchronization

Star synchronization	Cascaded synchronization	
Example: measuring rate = $25 \text{ kHz}$ , number of slaves = $13$		
Solution: total cable length $=$ 170 m,		
Partial cable length Partial cable length		
between master and slaves between the individual controllers		
appr. 13 meter (170 m div. 13 slaves)	appr. 2.3 meter (30 m div. 13 slaves)	

General:

$$N = \frac{CL_{max.} [nF] + L [m] * 0.1 [nF/m]}{C_{ln} [nF]}$$

$$N \qquad Number of slaves,$$

$$CL_{max.} \qquad Max. permissible load capacitance,$$

$$L \qquad Total cable length,$$

$$C_{ln} \qquad Input capacity slave (typ. 1 nF)$$

- If the controller are operated via the EtherCAT interface, then a synchronization
- even without the sync cable can be realized.

#### 4.5.9 Encoder Inputs

Three encoders can be connected simultaneously and powered with 5V using the 15-pin HD-sub connector.

Each encoder provides A, B and N signals (zero pulse, reference, index).

The maximum pulse frequency is 1 MHz.

Values for A, B, N: TTL level

 $2.4 \text{ V} \le \text{High} \le 5 \text{ V}$ 

 $0 \text{ V} \le \text{Low} \le 0.5 \text{ V}$ 

Reference value: GND

Encoder supply 5 V: 5 V each, max. 150 mA



Fig. 15 15-pin HD connector

Encoder	Pin	Signal	Encoder	Pin	Signal	Encoder	Pin	Signal
	5	A1	0	4	A2		3	A3
	15	B1		14	B2		13	B3
4	10	N1		9	N2	0	8	N3
	1	GND1	2	6	GND2	3	11	GND3
	2	5V-1		7	5V-2		12	5V-3
	Cover	Screen		Cover	Screen		Cover	Screen

Fig. 16 Encoder In pin configuration

Use a shielded cable of less than 3 m. Connect the cable shield to the cover.

Connection requirements

The signal refers to ground (GND). Tracks A and B of encoder n are connected to inputs An and Bn, with common ground GNDn. The inputs are not electrically isolated from the supply voltage.

#### 4.5.10 Status Inputs for External Light Sources

The Lifetime and Overheat error details are transmitted through the status cable (included in the delivery of the external light source IFX2471) from the external light source IFX2471 to the controller IFC2471, see A 3.6.

Use of the status cable is optional, as the status LEDs on the light sources will also indicate the state.

The status signals are used internally to help the controller detect any external light source errors automatically and to issue warnings.

## 4.6 Sensor Cable, Optical Fiber

Sensor and controller are connected through an optical fiber.

- Do not shorten or lengthen the optical fibers.
- Do not pull or hold the sensor on the optical fiber.
- The optical fibers has a diameter of 50  $\mu$ m.

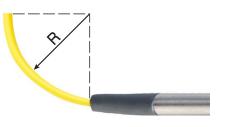
Do not soil the connectors, because this would lead to particle deposition in the controller and therefore to strong loss of light. Cleaning of the connectors requires the corresponding know-how and a fiber microscope for control.

#### **Basic Rules**

#### Avoid

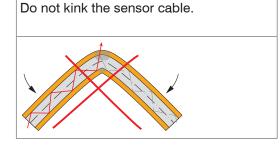
- any contamination of the connector, e. g. dust or finger prints, and frequent connecting and disconnecting
- any mechanical stress of the fiber (kinking, squeezing, pulling, twisting, knotting etc.)
- strong bending of the fiber. as the optical fiber is damaged thereby rapidly and this leads to permanent damage through micro-cracks

Please never underrun the allowed bending radius.



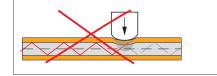
Fixed: R = 30 mm or more

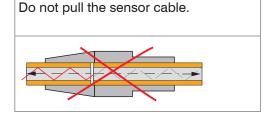
Flexible: R = 40 mm or more



Please do not grind the sensor cable over sharp corners.

Do neither squeeze the sensor cable nor fix it by using cable ties.





#### Miniature sensors IFS2402, hybrid sensors IFS2403

The optical fibers are fixed to the sensor and cannot be replaced. Repairs involve reducing the cable length and a new connector through the manufacturer only.

#### Standard sensors IFS2405

The sensor cable is connected to the sensor. Sensor cables may be up to 50 m long. Cables for drag chain use and cables with protective metal tubing are available, see A 1. A damaged sensor cable can be replaced, see 7.2.

## NOTICE

#### Connecting the sensor cable to the controller

- Remove the dummy connector from the green Sensor optical fiber socket on the controller.
- Plug the sensor cable (green connector, E2000/APC) into the optical fiber socket, and ensure that the sensor connector is aligned correctly.
- Push the sensor connector into the socket until it locks.

#### Disconnecting the sensor cable from the controller

- Push the sensor connector's release lever down, and pull the sensor connector out of the socket.
- Replace the dummy connector.

#### Optical fiber for the external light source

Connect the external light source and the controller with an optical fiber (blue connector, E2000/PC).

Make sure that you connect the optical fiber to the external light source and the controller first, before switching on the external light source.

#### Step by step installation of the optical fiber for IFX2471

- Connect the optical fiber with the controller, and ensure that the connector is aligned correctly.
- Push the sensor connector into the socket until it locks.

# Disconnecting the optical fiber from the controller

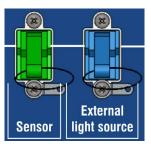
Push the connector's release lever down, and pull the connector out of the socket.



Fig. 17 Connecting the optical fiber to IFX2471

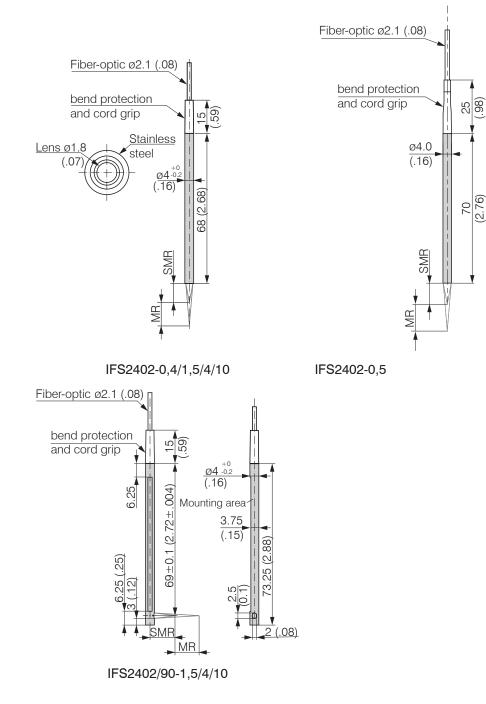
#### NOTICE

Close the optical inputs and outputs with protective caps when no fiber cable is connected.



## 4.7 Sensors

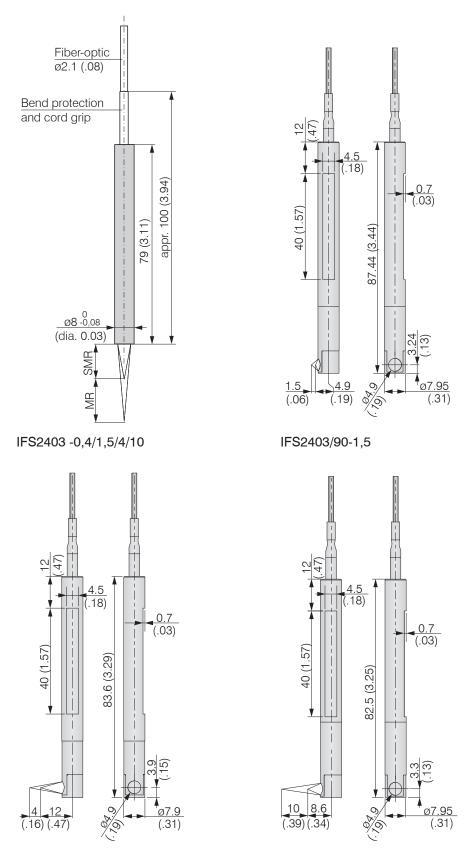
#### 4.7.1 Dimensions IFS2402 Sensors



MR = Measuring range SMR = Start of measuring range

Dimension in mm (Inch)

#### 4.7.2 Dimensions IFS2403 Sensors



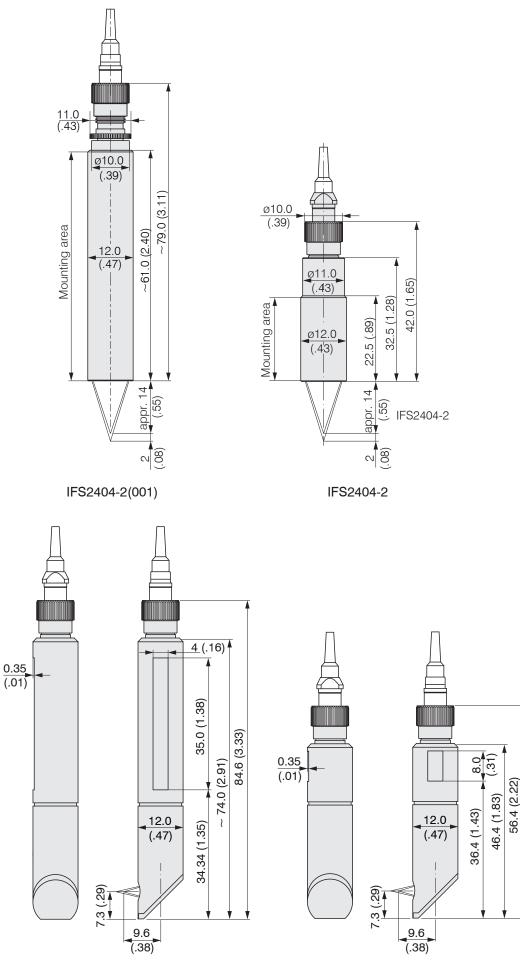
IFS2403/90-4

IFS2403/90-10

Dimension in mm (Inch)

MR = Measuring range SMR = Start of measuring range

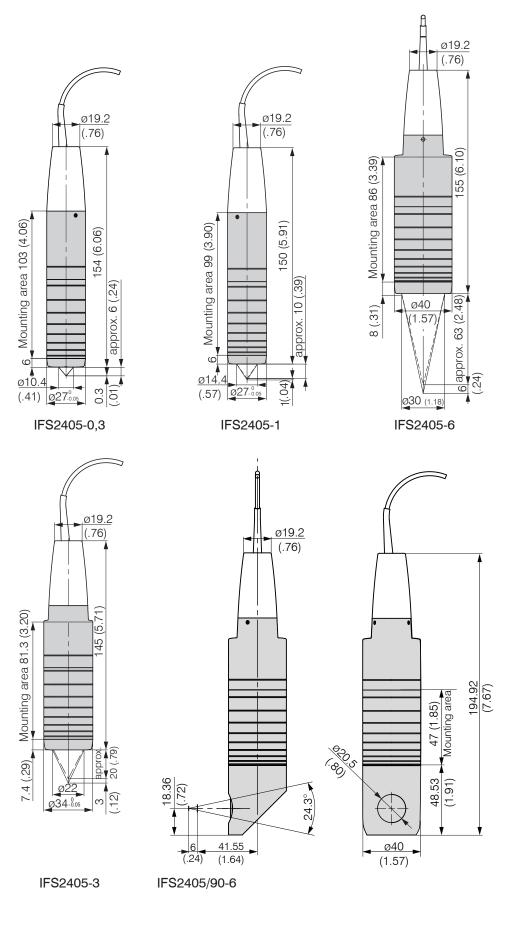




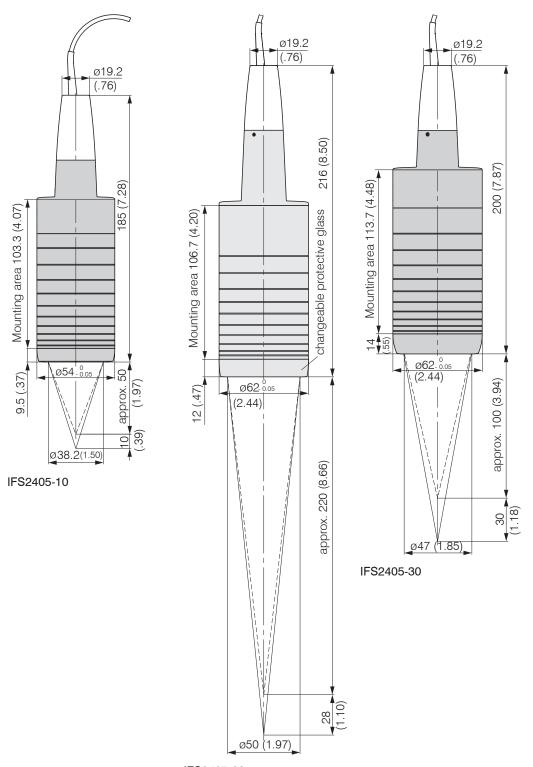
Dimension in mm (Inch)

confocalDT 24x1

## 4.7.4 Dimensions IFS2405 Sensors

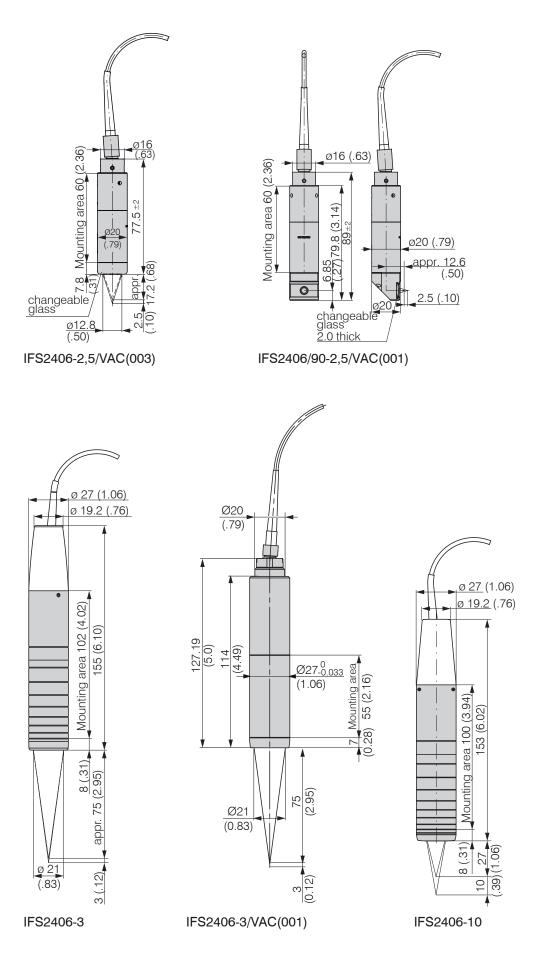


Dimension in mm (Inch)



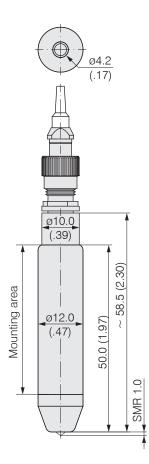
IFS2405-28

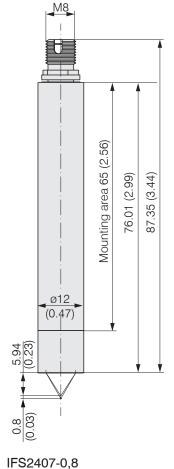
## 4.7.5 Dimensions IFS2406 Sensors



Dimension in mm (Inch)

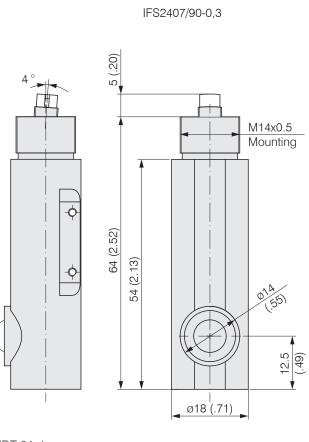
## 4.7.6 Dimensions IFS2407 Sensors

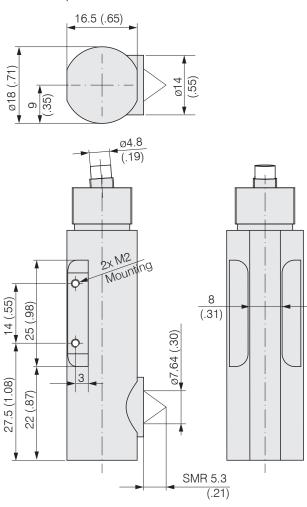




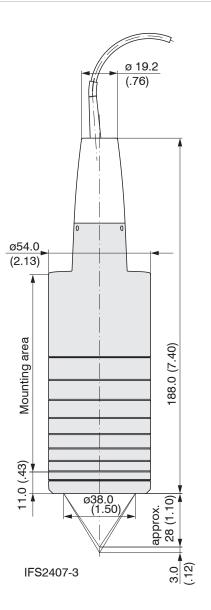
Dimension in mm (Inch)

IFS2407-0,1





confocalDT 24x1



Dimension in mm (Inch), not to scale

## 4.7.7 Start of Measuring Range

A base distance (SMR) must be maintained for each sensor.

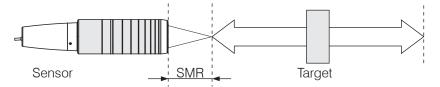


Fig. 18 Start of measuring range (SMR), the smallest distance between the sensor surface and the target.

Sensor

IFS2403-0.4

IFS2403-1.5

IFS2403-4

IFS2403/90-4

IFS2403/90-10

IFS2403-10

IFS2403/90-1.5

SMR = Start of measuring range, approximate values

Sensor	SMR
IFS2402-0.4	1.5 mm
IFS2402-0,5	1.7 mm
IFS2402-1,5	0.9 mm
IFS2402/90-1.5	2.5 mm <sup>1</sup>
IFS2402-4	1.9 mm
IFS2402/90-4	2.5 mm <sup>1</sup>
IFS2402-10	2.5 mm
IFS2402/90-10	3.5 mm <sup>1</sup>

Sensor	SMR
IFS2404-2	14 mm
IFS2404-2(001)	14 mm
IFS2404/90-2	9.6 mm <sup>1</sup>
IFS2404/90-2(001)	9.6 mm <sup>1</sup>

Sensor	SMR
IFS2405-0,3	6 mm
IFS2405-1	10 mm
IFS2405-3	20 mm
IFS2505-6	63 mm
IFS2405/90-6	41 mm <sup>1</sup>
IFS2405-10	50 mm
IFS2405-28	220 mm
IFS2405-30	100 mm

Sensor	SMR
IFS2406-2,5/VAC(003)	17.3 mm
IFS2406/90-2,5/VAC(001)	12.6 mm <sup>1</sup>
IFS2406/-3	75 mm
IFS2406-3/VAC(001)	75 mm
IFS2406/-10	27 mm

SMR

2.8 mm

8.1 mm

4.9<sup>1</sup> mm

14.7 mm

121 mm

11 mm

8.6<sup>1</sup> mm

Sensor	SMR
IFS2407-0,1	1.0 mm
IFS2407/90-0,3	5.3 mm
IFS2407-0,8	5.9 mm
IFS2407-3	28 mm

1) Start of measuring range measured from sensor axis

## 4.7.8 Mounting an Installation Bracket

### 4.7.8.1 General

1

The sensors of series IFS240x are optical sensors that operate in micrometers.

Please ensure careful handling during installation and operation!

Mount the sensors with a outer clamp. This type of sensor installation ensures the highest level of reliability because the sensor's cylindrical cover is clamped over a relatively large area. It must be used in complex installation environments, such as machines, production systems etc.

#### 4.7.8.2 IFS2402 Sensors

Use an installation bracket MA2402 to mount IFS 2402 sensors.

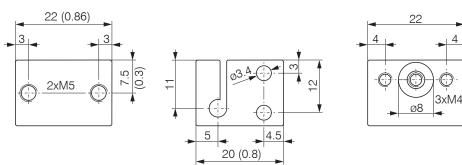


Fig. 19 MA2402-4 installation bracket



Fig. 20 Outer clamps with MA2402 for IFS2402 sensors

#### 4.7.8.3 IFS2403 Sensors

Use an installation bracket MA2403 to mount IFS 2403 sensors.

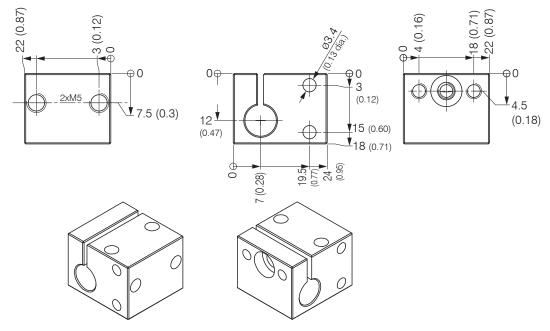


Fig. 21 MA2403 installation bracket

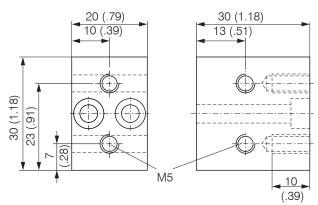
Dimension in mm (Inch)

(0.0)

ß

## 4.7.8.4 IFS2405, IFS2406 and IFS2407 Sensors

Use an installation bracket MA240x to mount the sensors.



Installation ring		Length A	Length B	Length C	Sensor
MA2400-27	0	ø27	ø46	19.75	IFS2405-0.3 IFS2405-1 IFS2406-3 IFS2406-10
MA2405-34		ø34	ø50	22	IFS2405-3
MA2405-40	$\square$	ø40	ø56	25	IFS2405-6
MA2405-54		ø54	ø70	32	IFS2405-10 IFS2407-3
MA2405-62		ø62	ø78	36.5	IFS2405-28 IFS2405-30
MA2406-20		ø20	ø36	14.5	IFS2406-2.5

Fig. 22 MA240x installation block and ring

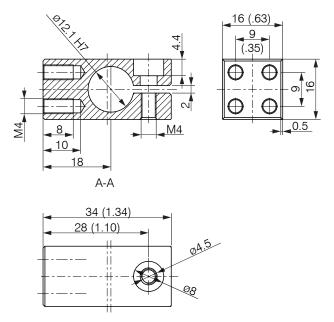


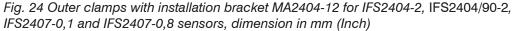
Fig. 23 Outer clamps with installation bracket MA240x for IFS2405, IFS2406 and IFS2407 sensor, consisting of mounting block and mounting ring

Dimension in mm (Inch)

### 4.7.8.5 IFS2404 and IFS2407 Sensors

Use an installation bracket MA2404-12 to mount IFS2404-2, IFS2404/90-2, IFS2407-0,1 and IFS2407-0,8 sensors.





Use the mounting area and two screws M2 or the mounting thread M14x0,5 to mount IFS2407/90 sensors.

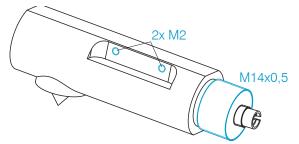


Fig. 25 Mounting for series IFS2407/90-0,3 sensors

#### 4.7.8.6 Adjustable Mounting Adapter JMA-xx

The JMA-xx adjustable mounting adapter is compatible with numerous confocalDT sensor models. You can find more information on these accessories in the Appendix, see A 5.

# 5. Operation

# 5.1 Commissioning

- Connect the controller to a voltage supply, see 4.5.3.
- Connect the sensor and the controller with the optical fiber (sensor cable), see 4.6

If you use controller IFC2471 with an IFX2471 external light source, the following applies:

- Connect the controller and the external light source with the optical fiber and the status cable.
- Connect the external light source to the mains power supply.
- Switch on the external light source, then switch on the controller using the Power switch.

When the controller has been switched on it initializes. The measuring system is ready after approx. 10 seconds. To ensure precise measurements, let the measuring system warm up for about 60 minutes. The system can be configured through web pages that are integrated into the controller or using commands, see A 7. We recommend configuring the controller through the web pages.

#### 5.2 **Operation Using Ethernet**

Dynamic web pages are generated in the controller which contain the current settings of the controller and the peripherals. Operation is only possible while there is an Ethernet connection to the controller.

#### 5.2.1 **Requirements**

To support a basic first commissioning of the sensor, the sensor is set to a direct connection.

If you have configured your browser to access the internet via a proxy server, in the browser settings you will need to add the IP address of the controller to the list of addresses which should not be routed through the proxy server. The MAC address of the unit can be found on the nameplate of the controller and on the test certificate calibration report.

- You need a HTML5 browser. Use one of the browsers below: 1
  - Internet Explorer 11.0 Mozilla Firefox 19.0

Google Chrome 25.0

Direct connection to PC, controller with static IP (Factory setting)				Net	work
PC	with static IP	PC	with DHCP	Con	troller with dynamic IP, PC with DHCP
	Connect the controller to a switch (i RJ-45 connectors.	ntran	et). Use a LAN cable with		Connect the controller to a switch (intranet). Use a LAN cable with RJ-45 connectors.
1	Start the sensorTOOL.exe pro- gram.	blisł (Cor nect	t until Windows has esta- ned a network connection nnection with limited con- tivity). Start the sensorTOOL.exe pro- gram.	from this prog	Enter the sensor in the DHCP / regis- ter the controller in your IT depart- ment. controller gets assigned an IP address your DHCP server. You can check IP address with the sensorTOOL.exe gram. Start the sensorTOOL.exe pro- gram.
This	program is available online at https:	//ww	w.micro-epsilon.com/downl	load/	software/sensorTOOL.exe.
1) Retthe F	Click the Select the designated controller from the list. In order to change the address settings, click the button Configure sensor IP. • IP type: static • IP address: 169.254.168.150 <sup>1</sup> • Subnet mask: 255.255.0.0 Click the button Apply, to transmit the changes to the controller. Click the button Open Website to connect the controller with your default browser. equires that the LAN connection on PC uses, for example, the following IP ress: 169.254.168.1.	onlir epsi sens	a program is available the at https://www.micro- lon.de/download/software/ sorTOOL.exe. Click the intermediate controller from the list. Click the button Open Website to connect the controller with your default browser.	Alter serv the o ture poss IFC2	Click the list. Select the designated controller from the list. Click the button Open Website, to connect the controller with your default browser. matively: If DHCP is used and the DHCP er is linked to the DNS server, access to controller via a host name of the struc- "IFC24x1_SN <serial_number>" is sible (where x = 5 for IFC2451, x = 6 for 2461, x = 7 for IFC2471). Start a web browser on your PC. To achieve a IFC2461 with the serial num- ber "01234567", type in the address bar on your browser "IFC2461_ SN01234567".</serial_number>
Inte	ractive web pages for setting the con	trolle	r and peripherals are now s	show	n in the web browser.

## 5.2.2 Access via Ethernet

Home Preferences Me	asurement Video signal Help/Info CONFOCAIDT 2461	MICRO-EPSILON
Select your language: English	Start page	
	Start measurement           Current settings:           • IFS2405-1-Sensor 1.00mm SN 00001184           • Distance measurement           • Output interface: Measurement Value Server	
	Measuring program and settings Measurement setup	
	Video signal Display setup and adjustment	
	Help/Information Serial number, software versions and contact details	

Use the upper navigation bar to access additional features (settings, video signal etc.).

All settings on the web page are applied immediately in the controller after pressing the Submit button.

Fig. 26 First interactive web page after calling the IP address

Parallel operation with keyboard and web browser is possible; the last setting applies. Do not forget to save your settings.

The appearance of the web pages may vary depending on functions and peripherals. Each page contains parameter descriptions and tips on completing the controller.

## 5.2.3 Measured Value Presentation with Ethernet

Start Measurement display in the horizontal navigation bar.

Diagram control and display are done in the browser with HTML5 which will continue to run independently from the controller (which will also continue to operate separately).

- By letting the diagram display run in a separate tab or browser window, you avoid having to restart the display every time.
- Click the Start button to begin displaying measurement results.

leasured values Distance neasurement	Distance m	easurement			
Select measuring program Aastering / Zeroing Set master value	Distance 1: Po Statistics min: Exposure time:	N/A Statistics max: 729.33 µs Measuring rate:	N/A Peak-Peak: 1 kHz Timestamp	N/A 28.9000 s	C
Mastering is INACTIVE.	Auto • 2.3 2.2 2.1 2.0 1.9 1.7 1.6 1.5 1.4 1.5 1.4 1.5 1.4 0.9 0.8 0.7 0.6 0.5 0.3 0.2 0.1 0.0 26.0 2 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	6.3 26.6 26.8 27.1 22 Time[s]		.8.3 28.6 28.1	Peakintensitä 100% – 90% – 80% – 70% – 60% – 30% – 20% – 10% – 0% –

Fig. 27 Displaying measuring results confocalDT 24x1

#### 5.3 **User Interface, Basic Preferences**

#### 5.3.1 Introduction

The following chapters describe any controller settings that are required to get started and quickly achieve first measuring results.

You can access additional submenus, e.g. for measuring rates and triggers, through the navigation bar on the left side of a web page.

When programming has been completed, all settings must be permanently stored 1 in a set of parameters to ensure that these settings will be available when the sensor is switched on the next time.

	Distance measurement	Parameter available with
available in the controller IFC24x1MP. This is characte-	Thickness measurement	controller IFC24x1 and cont- roller IFC24x1MP
rized by a separate format- ting.	Multilayer measurement	Parameter available with controller IFC24x1MP

For details about other measuring control settings and features, such as setting masters or triggers, see 6.

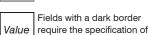
#### 5.3.2 **Measurement Program**

 $\rightarrow$ Select the desired type of measurement program from the list:

Home Preferences	Measurement Video signal Help/Info	confocalDT 2451
Login	Preferences > Measurement program	Save Setup
Measurement program	Measurement program	
Sensor	······································	
Exposure mode/measuring rate	Measurement to be effected	
Detection threshold	Measurement to be enected	Distance Measurement
Averaging/error handling	Used peak	First peak
Zeroing/mastering		
Material database		Submit
Digital interfaces		
Switching outputs	Distance measurement	
Analog output	Distance to the first surface	
Output-data rate		
Encoder inputs	Thickness measurement Thickness of one layer - distance between the first two	peaks
Trigger mode		
Synchronization	Status: OK	

Type of measure- ment	Distance	Used peak	first / highest / last peak	Distance to n-th surface, depends on the selected peak
	Thickness	Used peak	first and second / first and last / second to last and last / highest and second high- est peak	One-sided thickness mea- surement of transparent materials; the relevant ma- terial needs to be selected (refractive index).
		Selection of material	Vacuum / water	
	Multilayer r	measuremen	t	Selectable distances for up to 6 peaks
				Use refractive correction: Yes / No
				Material between Peak 1 / 2 6 and Peak 2 / 3 6

Fields with a grey background require a selection.



Fields with a dark border

MP

Parameter available with controller IFC24x1MP

1

The selected measuring program is used as the standard measuring program on startup.

a value.

# 5.3.3 Material Database

#### Select Material

One-sided thickness measurements require the refractive index of the transparent material to calculate the actual thickness. For this purpose, different material data are stored in the controller.

You can select the transparent material in the Thickness Measurement program, see 5.3.2.

Select the transparent material to be used for measuring the thickness.

Click Submit to confirm your selection.

The controller stores a material table that can be modified and added to, see 6.17.

Home Preferences	Measure	ement Vid	leo signal	Help/li	nfo Co	onfocal	DT 2451	MICRO-EPSILON
Login	Preference	es > Materia	l database					Save Setup
Measurement program	Mato	rial da	tabac	<b>`</b>				
Sensor	Inale	i lai ua	เลมสรง					
Exposure mode/measuring rate		Material name		Refractive index n⊏ at 486 nm	Refractive index n <sub>D at</sub> 587 nm	Refractive index n <sub>C at</sub> 656 nm	Abbe value n <sub>d</sub>	
Detection threshold		Vacuum, Air	Vacuum; air	1.000000	1.000000	1.000000		
Averaging/error handling								
Zeroing/mastering		Fused Silica	Quartz glass, silica	1.463126	1.458464	1.456367		
Material database		BK7	Crown glass	1.522380	1.516800	1.514320		
Digital interfaces		Acrylic	Acrylic rosin, e.g adhesive, lacquer	1.497828	1.491668	1.488938		
Switching outputs		РММА	Acrylic glass	1.497761	1.491756	1.489200		
Analog output			Polymethacryl	4 50 4000	4 50 4000	4 504000		
Output- data rate		PMMI	methylimid, a plastic	1.534000	1.534000	1.534000		
Encoder inputs		PS	Polystyrol, a plastic	1.604079	1.590481	1.584949		
Trigger mode		PC	Polycarbonat, a plastic	1.599439	1.585470	1.579864		

Micro-Epsilon assumes no responsibility for the stored material parameters.

#### 5.3.4 Selecting a Sensor

Controller and sensor(s) are matched at the factory.

Select the connected sensor (type, range and serial number) from the list.

Click Submit to confirm your selection.

Home Preferences	Measurement Video signal Help/Info confocalDT 2451				
Login	Preferences > Sensor				
Measurement program	Sensor				
Sensor					
Exposure mode/measuring rate	Connected Sensor: IFS2405-1 SN7101				
Detection threshold	Connected Sensor: IFS2405-1 SN7101				
Averaging/error handling					
Zeroing/mastering	Submit				
Material database					
Digital interfaces	The connected sensor is to be chosen from the stored calibration data (according to type, measurement				
Switching outputs	range and serial number). Calibration data of up to 20 different sensors can be stored within the controller.				
Analog output					
Output-data rate					
Encoder inputs					
Trigger mode					
Synchronization	Status: OK				

The calibration data of up to 20 different sensors can be stored in the controller.

#### 5.3.5 Exposure Mode / Measuring Rate

To select the exposure mode click Settings > Exposure mode/Measuring rate.

Home Preferences	Measurement Video signal Help/Info	confocalDT 2451
Login	Preferences > Exposure modes / measuring rate	Save Setup
Measurement program Sensor	Exposure mode / measuring rate	e
Exposure mode/measuring rate	Exposure mode:	leasurement mode-
Averaging/error handling	Measuring rate:	nanual 🔹
Zeroing/mastering Material database	Measurement rate / kHz:	.2 kHz
Digital interfaces	<b>Measurement rate</b> : 0.1 kHz 10 khz <b>Exposure time</b> : 0.1 μs 1 / Meauremen	trate
Switching outputs		Submit
Analog output Output-data rate	Automatic mode	
Encoder inputs	In order to ensure that each measurement object of possible measuring rate, the measuring rate and the adjustment is changed. The following basically app	nen the exposure time of the
Trigger mode Synchronization	EXPOSURE adjustment is charged. The following basically approximate the solution of the following basically approximate the following basi	

Exposure mode/ Measuring	Exposure mode	Automatic mode / Measurement mode / Manual mode / Alternating two time mode / Automatic two time mode
rate	Measuring rate (IFC2451)	0.1 / 0.2 / 0.3 / 1 / 2.5 / 5 / 10 kHz / manual
	Measuring rate (IFC2461)	0.1 / 0.2 / 0.3 / 1 / 2.5 / 5 / 10 / 25 kHz / manual
	Measuring rate (IFC2471LED)	0.1   1   2.5   5   10   25   50   70 kHz   manual
	Measuring rate (IFC2471)	0.3 / 1 / 2.5 / 5 / 10 / 25 / 50 / 70 kHz / manual
		Value (0.1 μs and 10.000 μs IFC2451)
	Exposure time 1 in $\mu$ s	Value (0.1 μs and 10.000 μs IFC2461)
		Value (0.1 μs and 3333.3 μs IFC2471/2471LED)
	Exposure time 2 (shorter) in $\mu$ s	Value (smaller than Exposure time 1)

Select the required exposure mode.

Automatic mode. Defines the exposure time and automatically sets the relevant measuring rate to ensure that the maximum measuring rate is used for each target. The following principles apply: maximum control range, lowest measuring rate (standard setting). Lasts 1 up to a maximum of 7 measurement cycles (change from no target too good reflective target).

Measurement mode. Maintains the required or suitable measuring rate, and adjusts only the exposure time. A smaller control range is used to achieve faster results. This mode also enables the user to work with targets with different reflections that have the same measuring rates. Lasts 1 up to a maximum of 7 measurement cycles (change from no target too good reflective target with 0.1 kHz measuring rate).

Manual mode. No automatic adjustments. Set (optimized) values are maintained. This makes sense for fast changes due to targets with identical surfaces moving in and out or for highly dynamic movements (no overshoots). It is not recommended to use this mode for strongly varying target surfaces. Manual mode can also be used for several layers if the brightest peak should not be captured. The video signal display can acquire suitable measuring rates and exposure times from automatic mode.



Fields with a grey background require a selection.

Value Fields with a dark border require the specification of a value Automatic two time mode. Fastest mode with two manually preset exposure times. The more suitable time is automatically selected. We recommend using this mode to measure distances for fast changing surface properties, such as mirrored or anti-glare glass.

Alternating two time mode. Operating mode with two manually preset exposure times that are used alternately. Suitable for two very different high peaks when measuring thickness. We recommend using this mode in particular, if the smaller peak disappears or the higher peak overshoots. A possible set video averaging is ignored here.

Select the required measuring rate.

- IFC2471: 0.3 kHz; 1 kHz; 2.5 kHz; 5 kHz; 10 kHz; 25 kHz; 50 kHz and 70 kHz;
- IFC2471LED: 0.1 kHz; 1 kHz; 2.5 kHz; 5 kHz; 10 kHz; 25 kHz; 50 kHz and 70 kHz;
- IFC2461: 0.1 kHz; 0.2 kHz; 0.3 kHz; 1 kHz; 2.5 kHz; 5 kHz, 10 kHz, 25 kHz
- IFC2451: 0.1 kHz; 0.2 kHz; 0.3 kHz; 1 kHz; 2.5 kHz; 5 kHz; 10 kHz.

Select manual to set the measuring rate with 100 Hz step size.

The applicable range of values for the current exposure time is displayed underneath the selection list.

Click Submit to confirm your selection.

When selecting the measuring rate, take the video signal into consideration, see 5.4.

#### Step-by-Step procedures:

Place the target in the midrange, see Fig. 28. Keep adjusting the measuring rate until you get a high signal intensity that is not oversaturated.

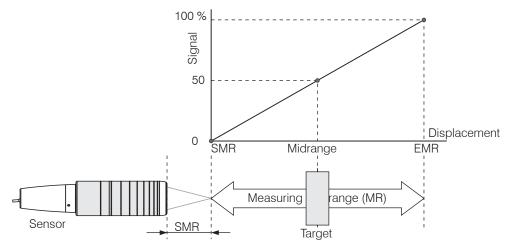


Fig. 28 Defining measuring range and output signal

To do this, observe the Intensity LED.



- If the Intensity LED changes to red, reduce exposure time or increase the measuring rate.
- If the Intensity LED changes to yellow, increase exposure time or reduce the measuring rate.
- Choose a measuring rate that makes the Intensity LED light up green.
- If necessary, change to manual mode.
- Use the required measuring rate, and adjust the exposure time. Or let the exposure time define possible measuring rates.

If the signal is low (Intensity LED is orange) or saturated (Intensity LED is red), the sensor will carry out measurements, but measuring accuracy might not correspond to the specified technical data.

# 5.4 Video Signal

After launching Video signal the following page is displayed. The diagram displayed in the large graph window on the right represents the video signal and the receiving row in different states of post processing.

The video signal displayed in the graph window displays the spectral distribution of the pixels in the receiving row. Left 0 % (small distance), and right 100 % (large distance). The corresponding measured value is marked by a vertical line (peak marking).

The diagram starts automatically when the web page is loaded.

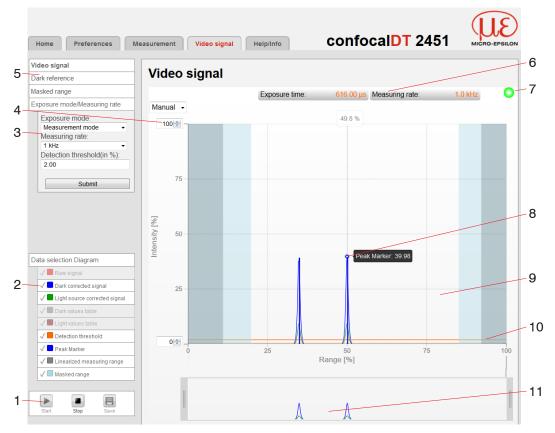


Fig. 29 Video signal web page

The Video signal web page includes the following features:

- 1 After clicking Stop data selection and zooming is still possible. Use the button Save to open the Windows dialog box for selecting the file name and location of video signals or correction tables in order to save them as CSV file that contains all pixels. Their (selected) intensities are output in % and further parameters.
- 2 In the window on the left, the video graph can be enabled or disabled both during and after measuring. Inactive graphs are grey. Click on the check mark to add them. If you want to have displayed one single signal, click on its name.
  - Raw signal (uncorrected CCD signal, red)
  - Dark corrected signal (raw signal minus dark level table, blue)
  - Light source corrected signal (signal which is corrected with the dark signal and the light source table, green),
  - Dark value table (table generated in response to dark referencing, grey)
  - Light value table (table generated in response to light referencing, brown)
  - Recognition threshold , changeable (horizontal orange line)
  - Peak marking (vertical blue line), corresponds to the evaluated measured value
  - Linearized measuring range (limited by grey hatching), not changeable
  - Masked range (limited by pale blue hatching), changeable

- 3 In the window on the left you can quickly adjust exposure mode, measuring rate and recognition threshold (in %). Click Submit to accept the new values.
- 4 Auto (= automatic scaling) or Manual (= manual setting) allow for scaling the intensity axis (Y axis) of the graph.
- 5 From the Video signal page, you can launch the Dark reference and Masked range directly, see 5.7.
- 6 In addition, the current exposure time values and the selected measuring rate are displayed above the graph.
- 7 Status Display
  - Green: OK; data transfer is active
  - · Yellow: data transfer is stopped
  - Red: sensor connection is disturbed
- 8 Mouseover feature. When moving the mouse over the graph, curve points or peak markings are highlighted with a circle symbol while the corresponding intensity is displayed. The corresponding x position is displayed in % above the graph window.
- 9 The linearized range is in the diagram between the grey hatchings and can not be changed. Only peaks of which the centers are in this range can be evaluated. The masked range may be limited if needed. Then an additional pale blue hatching limits the range on the right and on the left side. The peaks remaining in the resulting range are used for evaluation.
- 10 The recognition threshold, based on the dark corrected signal, is a horizontal straight line that corresponds to the preset value. It needs to be just high enough that no undesired video signal peak is included in the measurement. An acceptable signal-to-noise ratio requires the threshold to be as low as possible. The recognition threshold should not be changed if possible.
- 11 X axis scaling: The diagram displayed above is zoomable with both sliders on the right and on the left side in the lower total signal. Move it sideways also with the mouse in the center of the zoom window (cross arrow).

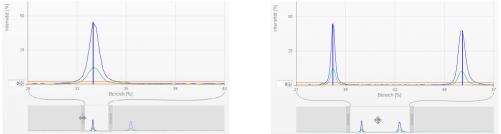


Fig. 30 Slider zoom: one-sided (left) and dragging with cross arrow (right)

1 In the state of active triggering, see figure, a trigger impulse is required that sets off the video signal. This indicates the display at the top right in the window. The status display may nevertheless be green. Exposure time and measuring rate are not displayed. Recommendation: switch off triggering while the video signal is displayed.



### 5.5 Dark Reference

This adjustment must be carried out after every sensor change. Dark referencing is sensor-dependent and is stored separately in the controller for each sensor. Therefore, you need to connect the required sensor and select Settings menu > Sensor, before you start dark referencing.

The controller requires a warm-up time of approx. 30 minutes before capturing dark signals.

Step-by-Step procedures:

- Remove the target from the measuring range, or cover the sensor surface with a piece of dark paper.
- $\stackrel{\bullet}{l}$  For dark referencing, no object must be within the measuring range, and no ambient or external light must reach the sensor.

**On the controller, press the** Dark reference **button**<sup>1</sup>, **or click the** Start dark reference **button on the** Dark reference **web page**.

The Intensity and Range LEDs will start flashing, and the sensor captures the current dark signal for about 20 seconds.

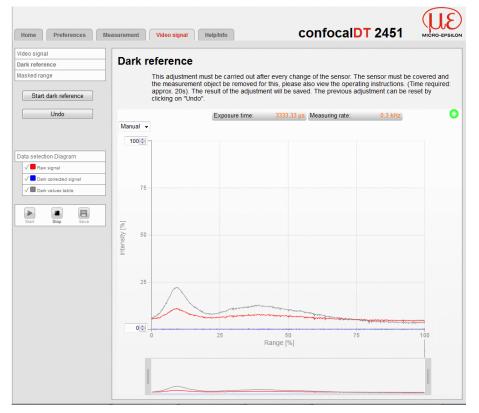


Fig. 31 Dark reference video signal (example: IFC2451 with LED light source)

After the dark referencing the dark corrected signal is characterized by an almost smooth waveform directly to the X-axis.

- Remove the paper cover from the sensor. The sensor can now be used as normal.
- Click Undo to reset the previous adjustment. You need to repeat dark referencing
- After replacing the lamp in the external light source. And for controller IFC2451, IFC2461 and IFC2471LED with an internal LED light source you will also need to carry out dark referencing at regular intervals.

The current brightness value (as the quotient of the sum of all intensities and the current exposure time), is determined with each new darkness correction. If a major change in the previously stored value is detected, this can be interpreted as the degree of contamination, and a warning is given.

You can also ignore this message. However, you should note the current exposure

1) After more than 10 seconds, the factory settings will load!

time in the case of time-critical measurements. Then gently clean the face of the sensor cable's E2000 connector. Only use pure alcohol and fresh lens cleaning tissue to do this. Then repeat the darkness correction. If nothing changes, the sensor cable can also have become damaged or the fibre connector lying in the controller may become soiled.

Change the sensor cable or submit the whole system for checking.

You can adjust the warning threshold if necessary in the event of contamination by an ASCII command (permissible deviation in %); the factory setting is 50 %, see A 7.3.3.5.

The warning threshold is stored specific to the setup.

## 5.6 Measurements and Web Page Display

#### 5.6.1 Distance Measurements

- Align the sensor vertically to the target object.
- Then, move the sensor (or the target) closer, until you more or less reach the start of measuring range for your sensor.

Once the object is within the sensor's measuring range, the Range LED (green or yellow) on the front of the controller will light up. Or, observe the video signal.

Name	State	Description
LED 1 Red		Intensity too high, first peak in saturation
Intensity	Yellow	Intensity too low, first peak below recognition threshold or no peak above the recognition threshold
	Green	Signal ok
LED 2	Red	No peak within the linearized (or masked) range
Range	Yellow	Peak in the midrange (47.5 52.5 %)
	Green	OK, at least one peak within the linearized (or masked) range
Error 1	Intensity = 1	Intensity too high or too low (warning, if intensity is saturated or below recognition threshold)
Error 2	Out of range $= 1$	No peak within the linearized range

Fig. 32 Description of LEDs and error signals for distance measurements

After launching Measurement the following web page is displayed. The diagram starts automatically when the web page is reloaded. The diagram in the large window to the right displays the value-time graph.



Fig. 33 Measurement web page (distance measurement)

- 1 By clicking on the button Resets statistics, the statistical values can be reloaded during the measurement. In stop mode, the statistical values calculated at this moment are displayed.
- 2 The diagram is ended by clicking Stop; data selection and zooming is still possible. Clicking on Save opens the Windows dialog box for selecting a location and file name in order to save the last 10,000 values in a CSV file (separated by semicolons).
- 3 Diagram Data Selection
  - Distance 1
  - Etc. (for thickness and multi-layer measurements) Inactive graphs are grey. Click on the check mark to add them. If you want to have displayed one single signal, click on its name.
- 4 In the left window, you can define settings for averaging readings. If the settings were defined in a different tab or window, you will then need to re-load the Mea-surement page to apply the settings.
- 5 Auto (= automatic scaling) or Manual (= manual setting) allow for scaling the intensity axis (Y axis) of the graph.
- 6 In addition, the values of distance, statistics, the current measuring rate, exposure time and time stamp are displayed in the text boxes above the graph. Errors are displayed as well.
- 7 Status Display
  - Green: OK; data transfer is active
  - Yellow: data transfer is stopped
  - Red: sensor connection is disturbed

- 8 Mouseover feature. When moving the mouse over the graph, curve points or peak markings are highlighted with a circle symbol while the corresponding values are displayed in the text boxes above the graph. The intensity bars are updated as well.
- 9 The peak intensity is displayed in form of bar graph.
- 10 X axis scaling: The total signal is zoomable with the slider on the left side during running measurement. The time range can be defined in the input field below the time axis. Once the diagram is stopped, you can use the right slider as well. The You may also move the zoom window sideways with the mouse in the center of the zoom window (cross arrow).
- In the state of active triggering, see figure, a trigger impulse is required that sets off the video signal. This indicates the display at the top right in the window. The status display may nevertheless be green.



# 5.6.2 Thickness Measurement of Transparent Objects

In Thickness Measurement mode, the controller evaluates two signals that reflect from the surface. The controller uses the two signals to calculate surface distances and thickness.

- Align the sensor vertically to the target object. Ensure that the target is located near the midrange (= SMR + 0.5 x MR).
- The light beam must meet the target surface at a right angle to avoid inaccurate measurements.

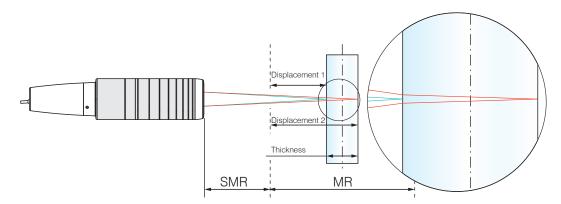


Fig. 34 One-sided thickness measurement for a transparent object

SMR	Start of measuring range		
MR	Measuring range		
Minimum target thickness	IFS2403 (hybrid sensor) approx. 15 % of the measuring range		
Minimum target thickness	IFS2405 (standard sensor) approx. 5 % of the measuring range, see 2.6.		
Maximum target thickness Sensor measuring range x refraction index for the			

The Range LED on the front of the controller lights up as soon as the two object surfaces are within the sensor's measuring range.

Name	State	Description	
	Red	Intensity of at least one of the first two peaks in saturation	
LED 1 Intensity Yellow		Intensity too low, one or both peaks below recognition threshold	
	Green	Signal ok	
	Red	Focus of none (or only one) of the peaks within the lin- earized or masked range	
LED 2 Range	Yellow	Average value from first and second peak in the midrange (47.5 52.5 %)	
	Green	OK, focus of at least two peaks within the linearized or masked range	
Error 1	Intensity = 1	Warning, if the intensity of at least one of the first two peaks is saturated or below recognition threshold	
Error 2	Out of range = 1	Focus of none (or only one) of the peaks within the lin- earized range	

Fig. 35 Description of LEDs and error signals for thickness measurements

Thickness can only be calculated correctly if the material has been specified. To balance the spectral adjustment of the refractive index, a minimum of three refractive index numbers for different wavelengths or one refractive index plus the Abbe number are required. If a target surface is outside the measuring range, the controller provides only one signal for distance, intensity and focus. This might also happen, if one signal is below the recognition threshold.

When measuring the thickness of a transparent material, two boundary areas are active. This means, that two peaks are displayed in the video signal, see Fig. 36.

Even if the recognition threshold is just below the saddle between the two peaks, the controller can determine both distances and use them to calculate the thickness.

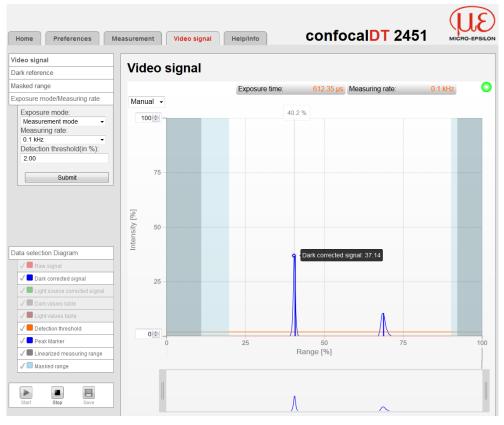


Fig. 36 Video signal web page (thickness measurement)

Measured values Thickness measurement	Thickne	ess measur	ement				
Select measuring program							
Vaterial settings	Distance 1:	1.591029 mm			Difference 1 / 2:	1.401455 mm	
/lastering / Zeroing	Statistics min		Statistics max:	1.40443 mm		0.003635 mm	
Set master value	Exposure tim	e: 612.1 µs	Measuring rate:	0.1 kHz	Timestamp	1.6800 s	
Mastering is INACTIVE.	Auto -						
	3.0 -			•			Peakintensität
veraging	2.9						
Video averaging	2.7						100%
No averaging -	2.6						90% -
Measurement averaging	2.4						
No averaging -							80% -
Submit	<u>E</u> 2.0						70% -
							10%
	1.7						60% -
ata selection Diagram	E 2.1 2.0 enje 2.0 1.8 1.7 1.7 1.5 1.5 1.4 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0			•			
Distance 1	ISB 1.4						50% -
Distance 2	₩ 1.2						40% -
Clotance 2	1.1						
J Difference 1/2	0.9						30% -
	0.8						20% -
	0.6						20% -
Start Stop Save	0.5						10% -
Reset statistics	0.3						
	0.2						0% - 1 2
	0.0+0+3	3 0.0 0.4	0.7 1.1	1.4 1.8	2.1 2.5	2.9 3.2	
			Tim	ne [s] 3,57 🚖			

Fig. 37 Measurement web page (thickness measurement)

The Measurement web page visually and numerically displays both distances and the thickness (difference 1/2), intensity is displayed for both peaks (peak 1 = close, peak 2 = far), see Fig. 37. Statistic values relate to thickness. All other settings and features are identical with those for distance measurements, see 5.6.1.

# 5.7 Load / Save Settings in the Controller

In this menu you can save current device settings to the controller and recall stored settings. You can permanently store eight different parameter sets in the controller.

Home Preferences	Measurement Video signal Help/Info confocalDT 2451
Login	Preferences > Settings loading / saving
Measurement program	Settings loading / saving
Sensor	Settings roading / saving
Exposure mode/measuring rate	Setup no.:
Detection threshold	
Averaging/error handling	Maintaining interface settings:
Zeroing/mastering	
Material database	Activate
Digital interfaces	Save setup
Switching outputs	
Analog output	
Output-data rate	Store settings in the controller permanently (otherwise the settings will be lost when turning off). Various
Encoder inputs	parameter sets can be stored. When turning on, the last stored parameter is loaded.
Trigger mode	Maintain interface settings
Synchronization	If the checkbox is activated, the settings for language, password, analog output and network will kept. Activate
Settings loading/saving	By clicking this button, the selected setup file is loaded in the controller. <b>Save setup</b> Clicking this button saves the settings in the selected setup file.
Manage setups on PC	Manage setups on PC Importing/exporting of setup and material settings between PC and controller.
Extras	Status: OK

### 5.7.1 Saving Settings in the Controller

Current settings are stored in the controller using the selected parameter set number. We recommend saving settings after programming the controller, as the settings will be lost when the controller is switched off.

How to save settings:

Select the required setup no. of parameters.

Click the Save setup button.

The current settings will be available after the controller has been switched off and on.

For a fast saving to the last saved setup use the Save setup button in every preferences page.

 $\stackrel{\bullet}{l}$  Switching on the controller loads the set of parameters that was last stored in the controller.

#### 5.7.2 Loading from the Controller

The settings that are stored for the selected parameter setup number in the controller are enabled.

How to load settings:

Select the required setup no. of parameters.

The measurement settings contain measuring properties, such as signal selection, measuring rate and filter settings.

Only maintain interface settings, if the controller is used with the same network and RS422 baud rate.

Select the Maintaining interface settings checkbox if desired.

Click the Activate button.

The controller uses the settings from the selected parameter set.

# 6. Advanced Settings

# 6.1 Login, Switching User Level

Assigning passwords prevents unauthorized changes to controller settings. Password protection is not enabled as a factory setting. The sensor works on the User level. After the controller has been configured, you should enable password protection. The standard password for the User level is 000.

- A software update will not change the standard password or a custom password.
- The user level password is setup-independent, and is not loaded or stored during setup.

User can do the following:

	User	Professional
Password required	no	yes
View settings	yes	yes
Change settings, change passwords	no	yes
View readings, video signals	yes	yes
Scale graphs	yes	yes
Restore factory settings	no	yes

Fig. 38 Permissions within the user hierarchy

Login	Enter the standard password 000 or a custom password into the
You are logged in as <b>User</b> . Password for login as a professional:	Password box, and click Login to confirm.
	To change to user mode, click the Logoff button.

#### Fig. 39 Changing to professional level

In  ${\tt User}$  mode, you can use the change password features to assign a custom password.

Password		All passwords are case-sensitive. Numbers are al- lowed, but special characters are not permitted.
User level at restart	User / Professional	Defines the user level that is enabled when the sensor starts the next time. MICRO-EPSILON recommend to select Professional level.

When an professional restores the factory settings (Settings menu > Tools >

Factory Settings), the Professional level password is reset to 000.

### 6.2 Detection Threshold

The detection threshold (in %, relates to the signal after dark correction) defines the minimum intensity for including a video signal peak in the measurement. Therefore, the video graph must be taken into consideration when defining the threshold.

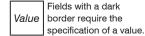
Peak detection threshold	Value	Value in %, factory setting: 1%
--------------------------	-------	---------------------------------

Defining the peak detection threshold

- For very weak signals (e.g. typical for extremely high measuring rates), choose a low detection threshold, as only signal parts above this threshold will be included in measurements.
- For thickness measurements, you may increase the detection threshold, if video signal peaks merge. In general, set the threshold high enough to avoid that any interfering video signal peaks are detected.

The detection threshold affects linearity, it is therefore recommended to adjust it as little as possible.

Click Submit to confirm selection of the recognition threshold.



selection.

Fields with a grey background require a

Video averaging	no averaging / recursive 2   4   8 moving 2   4   3 median 3			Video averaging is carried out before measuring distances or thickness. Recommended for very small peaks.
Measured	no averaging			Specify the type of averaging.
value averaging	moving N values	2 / 4 / 8 1024	Value	N defines how many sequential measurements the controller wil use for averaging, before
	recursive N values	2 32768	Value	issuing the next reading. Averaging does not affect the
	median N values	3/5/7/9	Value	measurement frequency.
Error handling	Error output, no me	asurement out	out	Sensor displays an error number.
	Hold last value	0 1024	Value	If no valid reading can be obtai- ned, the last valid value can be hold for a certain period of time, and will be issued repeatedly. If the reading is 0, the last valid value is hold permanently.
Spike	No			
correction	Yes	Evaluation length 1 - 10	Value	This filter removes individual very high spikes from a relativel constant course of measure- ment value.
		Max. toler- ance range (mm)	Value	Smaller spikes are preserved.
		0 - 100		
		Number of corrected value	Value	
	1 - 100			
Statistics	2   4   8   16 16384   all measured values			The statistical values Minimum, Maximum and Peak-to-Peak are calculated and output from a predefined number of measu- ring values.
Signal for statistics	Distance 1 6 / Difference 1 - 2 up 5 - 6			For multilayer measurement program the signal is selectab-

#### 6.3 Averaging, Error Handling, Spike Correction, Statistics

Averaging can be performed in two different signal processing areas.

- Video signal averaging

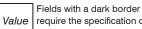
calculation

- Measurement averaging

It is recommended to use averaging for statistical measurements or slowly changing readings. Averaging reduces noise and suppresses distortions in readings.



Fields with a grey background require a selection.



Value require the specification of a value.

MP

Parameter available with controller IFC24x1MP

le and will if not already done, added to the output via Ethernet

automatically.

#### **Processing sequence:**

- 1. Video averaging
- 2. Unlinearized distances
- 3. Linearizing the distances
- 4. Refractive index correction of the distances
- 5. Troubleshooting when there is no valid measured value
- 6. Spike correction of the distances
- 7. Difference generation for thicknesses
- 8. Measured value averaging
- 9. Statistics

### 6.3.2 Video Averaging

The following video graphs can be averaged successively and pixel by pixel in the sensor. In the web browser, under Video signal, you can see the effect of the various settings.

Video averaging is especially recommended for very small video signal peaks to help reduce the threshold and to achieve a greater number of valid readings.

The video averaging must be ignored in the two times alternating exposure mode.

#### 6.3.3 Measurement Averaging

Measurement averaging is performed after measurement values have been calculated, and before they are issued or processed through the relevant interfaces.

Measurement averaging

- improves the resolution
- allows masking individual interference points, and
- 'smoothes' the reading.
- Linearity is not affected by averaging. Averaging has no effect on measuring rate
- and output rate.

The internal average value is re-calculated for each measuring cycle.

The defined type of average value and the number of values must be stored in the controller to ensure they are hold after it is switched off.

Controller IFC24x1 is delivered with "moving average, averaging value = 1" as factory settings, ie. averaging is not enabled by default.

### Moving average

The definable number N for successive measurements (window width) is used to calculate the arithmetic average  $M_{mov}$  according to the following formula:

$$M_{mov} = \frac{\sum_{k=1}^{N} MV (k)}{N}$$

$$M_{mov} = \frac{MV}{N}$$

$$M_{mov} = \frac{MV}{N}$$

$$MV = measured value N = averaging value k = continuous index (in the window) M_{mov} = average value or output value$$

Each new measured value is added, and the first (oldest) value is removed from the averaging (from the window). This produces short response times for measurement jumps.

#### **Example**: N = 4

- Moving average in the controller IFC24x1 allows only potentials of 2 for N. The highest averaging value is 1024.
- 1

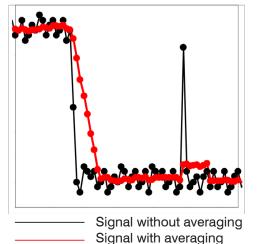


Fig. 40 Moving average, N = 8

#### **Recursive average**

Formula:

$$M_{rec} (n) = \frac{MV_{(n)} + (N-1) \times M_{rec (n-1)}}{N}$$

- Application tips
- Smooths measured values
- The effect can be finely controlled in comparison with the recursive averaging
- With uniform noise of the measured values without spikes
- At a slightly rough surface, in which the roughness should be eliminated
- Also suitable for measured value jumps at relatively low settling time

MV = measured value  $N = averaging value, N = 1 \dots 32768$ n = measurement index M<sub>rac</sub> = average value or output value

The weighted value of each new measured value MV(n) is added to the sum of the previous average values

M<sub>rec</sub> (n-1).

Recursive averaging allows for very strong smoothing of the measurements, however it requires long response times for measurement jumps. The recursive average value shows low-pass behaviour.

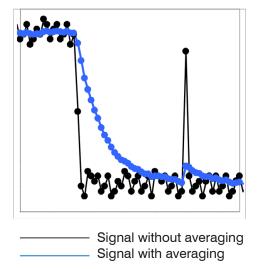


Fig. 41 Recursive Average, N = 8

# Application tips

- Permits a high degree of smoothing of the measurement values. However, it requires extremely long transient recovery times for measured value jumps (low-pass behaviour)
- Permits a high degree of smoothing for noise without strong spikes
- For static measurements, to smooth signal noise
- For dynamic measurements on rough surfaces, to eleminate the roughness, e.g. roughness of paper
- For the elimination of structures, e. g. parts with uniform grooves, knurled rotary parts or roughly milled parts
- Unsuitable for highly dynamic measurements

### Median

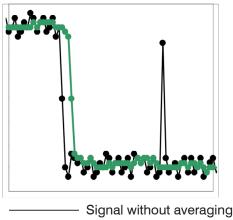
A median value is formed from a preselected number of measurements.

When creating a median value for controller IFC24x1, incoming readings are sorted after each measurement. Then, the average value is provided as the median value.

3, 5, 7 or 9 readings are taken into account. This means that individual interference pulses can be suppressed. However, smoothing of the measurement curves is not very strong.

**Example**: Median value from five readings

 $\dots 0 \ 1 \ \underline{2 \ 4 \ 5 \ 1 \ 3} \rightarrow \text{Sorted measurement values: } 1 \ 2 \ \underline{3} \ 4 \ 5 \qquad \text{Median}_{(n)} = 3$  $\dots 1 \ 2 \ \underline{4 \ 5 \ 1 \ 3 \ 5} \rightarrow \text{Sorted measurement values: } 1 \ 3 \ \underline{4} \ 5 \ 5 \qquad \text{Median}_{(n+1)} = 4$ 

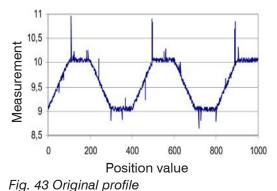


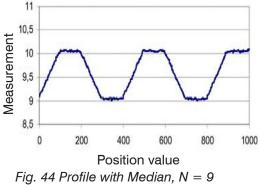
\_\_\_\_\_ Signal with averaging

Fig. 42 Median, N = 7

#### Application tips

- The measurement value curve is not smoothed to a great extent, used to eliminate spikes
- Suppresses individual interference pulses
- In short, strong signal peaks (spikes)
- Also suitable for edge jumps (only minor influence)
- For rough, dusty or dirty environment, to eliminate dirt or roughness
- Further averaging can be used after the median filter





### 6.3.4 Error Handling (Hold Last Value)

If no valid reading can be obtained, an error is issued. Should this be a problem for processing, the last valid value can be hold for a certain period of time, and will be issued repeatedly.

Between 1 and 1024 values can be hold.

If the number is 0, the last value is hold until a new, valid reading is obtained.

### 6.3.5 Spike Correction

This special form of filtering is used to remove very high spikes from a relatively constant course of measurement values, though while retaining any smaller spikes. A median would remove all the spikes.

The assessment of whether a measurement is a spike (outlier) is based on the mean of a particular number of previous valid readings. The permissible deviation from the next value is calculated using the tolerance range. If the new measured value deviates too much, it will be corrected to the previous value. A maximum number of consecutive measured values to be corrected must also be stated.

Attention: In the event of several consecutive spikes (outliers), the previous corrected value is used in the correction of the following measured value. Use this function only in appropriate applications. Improper use can lead to a distortion of the measured value sequence! Check the possible impact of a changed measured value sequence on the measuring environment and subsequent controllers/systems.

This function acts the same way on all output distances; the differences (thicknesses) are calculated on the basis of the corrected distances.

- Evaluation length. Number of previous measured values to be assessed (max. 10). Х
- Max. tolerance range (mm); the spike (outlier) correction comes into play when the ٧ value is not met or is exceeded
- Number of corrected value (max. 100) 7

Example: x = 3 / y = 0.05 / z = 1

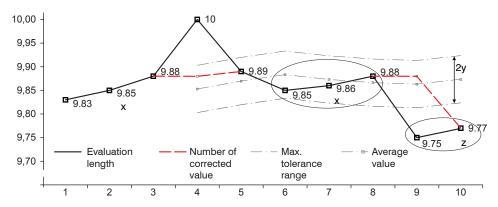
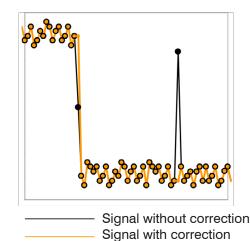


Fig. 45 Correction of measuring values



### Application tips

- Eliminating spikes with an adjustable threshold
- For highly dynamic data acquisition of fast moving objects
- With measurement jumps suitable, especially those with interfering peaks
- With edge jumps and with some bent edge transitions
- Execution is done before other averages take place

Fig. 46 Different signals

#### 6.3.6 **Statistics**

The controller derives the following statistical values from the measurement result:

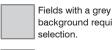
MIN	Minimum	Haximum
MAX	Maximum	Signal Signal
PEAK-PEAK	Peak-to- peak value (time span)	Peak-peak Evaluation cycle

Fig. 47 Evaluation cycle of statistical values

Statistical values are calculated from measurements within an evaluation cycle. The number of measurements used for calculation can be between 2 and 16384 (potential of 2), or include all measurements.

Use the Statistics reset button or the RESET STATISTICS command to start a new evaluation cycle (storage period). When a new cycle starts, previous statistical values are deleted.

Statistical values are displayed in the web interface (Measurement section) or issued via the interfaces.



background require a selection.

Fields with a dark Value border require the specification of a value.

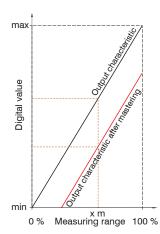
# 6.4 Zeroing, Mastering

Use zeroing and setting masters to define a target value within the measuring range. This shifts the output range. This feature can be useful, for example, when several sensors carry out measurements simultaneously in thickness and planeness measurements. When measuring the thickness of a transparent target using controller IFC24x1, you need to specify the actual thickness of a master object as Master value.

Master value	Valuo	Specify the thickness (or other parameter) of a master object.
in mm	value	Value range: – 2 x measuring range to + 2 x measuring range

Mastering (setting masters) is used to compensate for mechanical tolerances in the sensor measurement setup or to correct chronological (thermal) changes to the measuring system. The master value, also called calibration value, is defined as the target value.

The master value is the reading that is issued as result of measuring a master object. Zeroing is when you set a master with 0 (zero) as the master value.



When setting a master, the sensor characteristic is moved in parallel. Moving the characteristic reduces the relevant measuring range of a sensor (the further master value and master position are located, the greater the reduction).

#### Setting masters/Zeroing – Step-by-Step:

- Place target and sensor into their required positions.
- Define the Master value (web interface/ASCII).

After setting the master, the sensor will issue new readings that relate to the master value. If you click the Reset master value button to undo the mastering process, the system reverts to the state that existed before the master was set.

Fig. 48 Moving the characteristic when mastering

• Mastering or zeroing requires a target object to be present in the measuring range and affects both analog and digital outputs.

Digital interface selection	Output in the web diagram / Ethernet measurement transfer / RS422 / EtherCAT	Defines which interface is used for data output. No parallel data output via multiple channels.		
Data selection	Distance 1, 2 / Distance 3 6 / Difference 1 - 2 / Difference 1 - 3 up 5 - 6 / Statistics Min / Statis- tics Max / Statistics Peak-Peak / Exposure time / Intensity of the (all) distance value(s) / Encoder 1 / Encoder 2 / Encoder 3 / Error status / Measured value counter/ Time stamp /Trigger time differ- ence	Select the relevant check boxes to choose which data are used for transmission. The data are issued one after the other in a de- fined sequence. RS422 allows transmission of no more than 32 records.		
Ethernet       IP settings for controller         settings       Ethernet measured value transfer         settings       Settings		Static IP address / DHCP	Values for IP address / gateway / subnet mask. Only for static IP ad- dresses.	
		Server / Client	Values for port and IP address	
			TCP/IP / UDP/IP	
Settings RS422	Baud rate	9.6   115.2   230.4   460.8   691.2   921.6   1500   2000   3500   4000 kBps		
Ethernet/ EtherCAT	Operating mode after start	Ethernet / EtherCAT		

#### 6.5 **Digital Interfaces**

#### 6.5.1 Selecting a Digital Interface

Controller IFC24x1 has three digital interfaces that can be used as an alternative data output in conjunction with parameterization.

- Ethernet: allows fast data transfer, but provides no real-time capabilities (packet-based data transfer). Both measurement and video data can be transferred. Use to capture measurements without any direct process control, for subsequent analysis. Parameterization is provided through the web interface or ASCII commands.
- RS422: provides a real-time capable interface with a lower data rate.
- EtherCAT: allows a fast data transfer in real-time capability. Requires the software TwinCAT (Beckhoff) on PC. The configuration is done exclusively through Service Data Objects. The web interface can not be used simultaneously.

The HyperTerminal® application provides an interface for serial communication with the controller using RS422, and Telnet® is used for Ethernet connections. Use the program "TwinCAT" for EtherCAT.

#### **RS422 Interface** 6.5.2

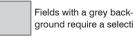
The RS422 interface has a maximum baud rate of 4000 kBaud. As a factory setting, the baud rate is set to 115.2 kBaud. Use ASCII commands or the web interface to configure.

Transfer settings for controller and PC must match.

Data format: Binary. Interface parameters: 8 data bits, no parity, 1 stop bit (8N1) Selectable baud rate.

The RS422 interface can transfer 18 bits per output value. In addition, up to 32 output values can be transmitted simultaneously.

The maximum number of measured values that can be transferred for each measuring point depends on the controller measuring rate and the selected RS422 interface transmission rate. Where possible, use the maximum available transmission rate (baud rate), see A 7.5.2.



ground require a selection.

Fields with a dark border Value require the specification of a value.

MP

Parameter available with controller IFC24x1MP

confocalDT 24x1

#### 6.5.3 Ethernet

When using a static IP address, you need to specify values for IP address, gateway and subnet mask. This is not necessary when using DHCP.

The controller is preset to acquire the IP address through DHCP, and it supports link/ local operation.

The controller transmits the Ethernet packets at a transmission rate of 10 MBit/s or 100 MBit/s. The transfer rate is selected automatically depending on the connected network or PC.

Any output values and additional information to be transmitted that are logged at one point in time are combined to form a value frame. Multiple value frames are combined as one measurement block. A header is added to the start of each measurement value packet.

When transmitting measurement data, the controller sends each measurement value (measured value block) to the connected remote station after successful connection establishment. No explicit request is required.

If any changes are made to the transmitted data or the frame rate, a new header will be sent automatically. Distance and thickness values are transmitted as 32 bit signed integer with 1 nm resolution.

Video signals are transmitted the same way as measurement data are sent to a measurement server via Ethernet with one exception: only one video signal per measurement block is transmitted, and each video signal must be requested individually.

This measured value block can also consist of several Ethernet packets depending on the size of the video signal.

#### 6.5.4 EtherCAT

The interface allows a fast transfer of measured values. The controller supports CANopen over EtherCAT (CoE).

Service Data Objects SDO: All parameters of the controller can thus be read or modified, all measured values and also the dark-corrected video signal can be polled individually.

Process Data Objects PDO: A PDO telegram is used for real-time transmission of measured values. Individual objects are not addressed. The content of the previously selected data are transmitted.

Distance and thickness values are transmitted as 32 bit signed integer with 1 nm resolution.

You will find further information in the appendix, see A 8.

You can not change directly to the EtherCAT interface through the web interface. Restart your controller to do this. The web site is no longer available.

You will find further instructions how to change from EtherCAT interface back to Ethernet in the appendix, see A 8.2.2.

## 6.6 Switching Outputs

Assignment of the switch outputs (digital I/O)	Switching output "Error 1" Switching output "Error 2"	Error intensity (F1) / Outside of measuring range (F2) / F1 or F2 / Lower limit value (Gr1) / Upper limit value (Gr2) / Gr1 or Gr2 / No output
Limit value settings	Lower limit value (in mm)	Value
	Upper limit value (in mm)	Value
	Measurement value that belongs to limit values	Distance 1, 2 / Distance 3 6 / Difference 1 - 2 / Difference 1 - 3 up 5 - 6
Switch threshold of the error outputs	High active / low active	

## 6.6.1 Assignment of the Switch Outputs (digital I/O)

Switching outputs "Error 1" and "Error 2" of the "Digital I/O" terminal block can be individually assigned to different errors and thresholds.

Per default, "Error 1" is assigned to intensity errors (F1, peak too high or too low), and "Error 2" corresponds to the signal being outside the measuring range (F2).

### 6.6.2 Limit Value Settings

You can also use the "Error 1" and "Error 2" switching outputs to monitor threshold values. In this case, enter lower and upper limit values (in mm).

### 6.6.3 Switch Threshold of the Error Outputs

The switching logic for errors or out-of-range results can be set to high active or low active.

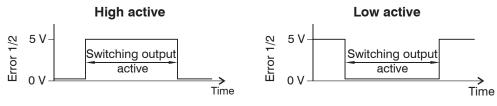
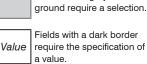


Fig. 49 Behavior of the binary outputs Error 1 and Error 2

Selecting the switching logic is different from selecting a level by using a screw terminal bridge on the front of the controller, see 4.5.7.

You can set the screw terminal voltage level to 5 V or 24 V.



MP

Parameter available with controller IFC24x1MP

Fields with a grey back-

# 6.7 Analog Output

Analog outputs can either be used for distance or thickness measurements. Only one type of measurement can be transmitted at any given time. The analog output has a resolution of 16 bit.

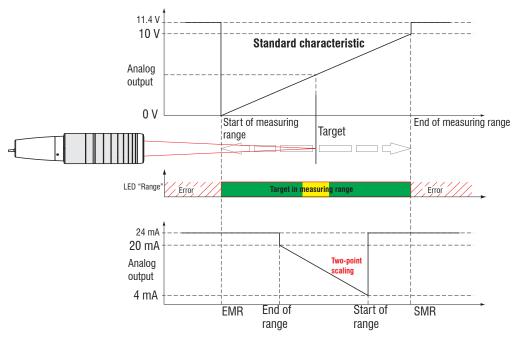
Output signal	Distance 1, 2 / Dis- tance 3 6 / Difference 1 - 2 / Diffe- rence 1 - 3 up 5 - 6	With the distance measuren only Distance 1 can be mea	
Output range	4 20mA / 0 5V / 0 10V / -5 5V / -10 10V / inactive	Either the voltage or the cur the controller can be used a	-
Scaling	Standard scaling	Distance measurements: scaled to 0 measuring ra Thickness measurements: scaled to 0 2 * measuring	0
	Two-point scaling	Start of range (in mm):	Value
		End of range (in mm):	Value

Output value scaling depends on which measuring program was selected for the relevant output range:

- for distance measurements: 0 ... measuring range
- for thickness measurements: 0 ... 2 \* measuring range

The first value corresponds to the start of the measuring range and the second value to the end of the measuring range. If the analog range needs to be moved, we recommend to use zeroing or mastering.

Two-point scaling enables the user to specify separate start and end values (in millimetre) for the sensor's measuring range. The available output range of the analog output is then spread between the minimum and maximum values. This allows for decreasing analog characteristics, see Fig. 50.



### Fig. 50 Scaling the analog signal

# 6.8 Output Data Rate

	1
Value	Fields with a dark border require the specification of a value.

Fields with a grey background require a selection.

Parameter available with controller IFC24x1MP

Measured value		Only every n-th value is used ( $n = 1, 2 \dots 1000$ ). All other measured values are discarded.
Reducing interfaces	Analog / RS422 / Ethernet	Select the relevant check boxes to choose which interfaces are used for data reductions.

MP

# 6.9 Encoder Inputs

A maximum of three encoder values can be assigned to the measured data. They will then be issued and used as trigger conditions. This exact assignment to the measured values is ensured by the fact that exactly the encoder values are output that are exist in half of the exposure time of the measured value (the exposure time may vary due to the control). Tracks A and B make it possible to detect directions. Each of the three encoders can be configured separately. The encoder socket configuration, see 4.5.9.

Encoder 1 / 2 / 3 Interpolation		single / double / quadruple resolution
	Effect on reference track	no effect / set on first track /set with every track
	Set on value	Value
	Maximum value	Value

#### 6.9.1 Interpolation

The counter reading increases or decreases with each interpolated pulse flank.

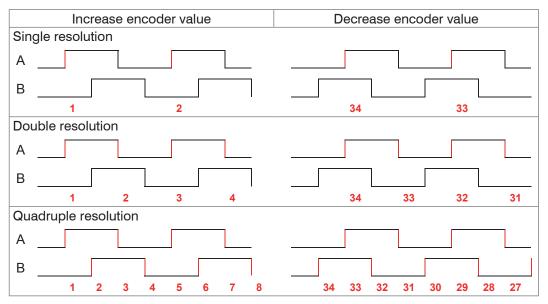


Fig. 51 Pulse sequence encoder signals

### 6.9.2 Effect on the Reference Track

No effect. The encoder counter continues to count; the signal is reset when the controller is switched on or if you click on Set on value.

To set on first track. Sets the encoder counter to the defined value, if it reaches the first reference mark. It is the first mark after turning on the controller. Without turning off only after pressing the button Use next mark.

To set with every track. Resets the encoder counter to its starting value at all marker positions or when reaching a marker for a second time (e.g. with traversing movements).

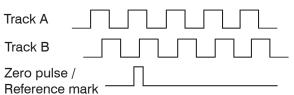


Fig. 52 Reference signal of an encoder

#### 6.9.3 Set on Value

The encoder are set to this value each time the controller is switched on, also at the reference marks (if used).

background require a selection. Fields with a dark border require the

Fields with a grey

Value border require the specification of a value.

### 6.9.4 Maximum Value

If the encoder exceeds the maximum value, the counter is reset to zero. Examples include rotary pulse indicators without a zero-signal (reference track). The maximum counter reading before a reset is 4,294,967,295 (2 ^ 32-1). It can be limited to smaller values.

### 6.10 Trigger Mode

Value input and output on the confocalDT 2451/2461/2471 can be controlled through external electrical trigger signals or commands. Both analog and digital outputs are affected. The measured value to the trigger point is output delayed, see 6.19.

- Triggering does not affect preset measuring rates.
- The Sync input is used as external trigger input.
- Factory settings: no triggering, the controller starts transmitting data as soon as it is switched on.
- "Sync in" pulse duration is 5  $\mu$ s or more.

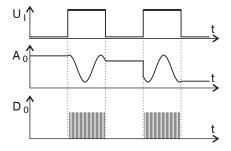
Level triggering	Measurement value input Measurement value output	Level low / level high	
Edge triggering	Measurement value input Measurement value output	Start of measured value output	Falling edge / increasing edge
		Number of meas- ured values	Value
Software triggering	Measurement value input Measurement value output	Number of meas- ured values	Value
Encoder triggering	Measurement value input Measurement value output	Triggering by	Encoder 1 / Encoder 2 / Encoder 3
		Step size	Value [1 2 <sup>31</sup> ]
		Lower limit	Value
		Upper limit	Value [1 2 <sup>32</sup> ]
No triggering		continuous value ou	tput

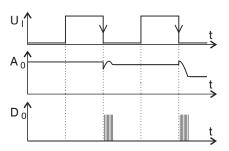
Level triggering. Continuous value input/output for as long as the selected level is active. After that the controller stops the input/output of the values. Pulse duration must last for at least one cycle. The subsequent pause must also last for at least one cycle.

Fig. 53 Active high level trigger (U), relevant analog signal ( $A_o$ ) and digital signal ( $D_o$ )

Edge triggering. Starts value input/output as soon as the selected edge is active to the trigger input. If trigger conditions are met, the controller outputs a defined number of measurements. Value range between 1 and 16383. After completion of data output the analog output remains standing at the last value (Sample & Hold). The duration of the pulse must be at least 5  $\mu$ s.

Fig. 54 Falling edge trigger (U), relevant analog signal ( $A_{o}$ ) and digital signal ( $D_{o}$ )



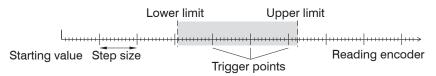


Fields with a grey background require a selection.

Fields with a dark border require the specification of a value.

Software triggering. Starts outputting values as soon as a software command (instead of the trigger input) or the Initiate trigger button is activated. The point in time is not defined as accurately. If trigger conditions are met, the controller outputs a defined number of measurements. Value range between 1 and 16383. Value output can be stopped with a command, see A 7.

Encoder triggering. One of the three encoder inputs can be used as trigger signal. If trigger conditions are met, the controller outputs values and then waits for subsequent trigger signals.



#### Fig. 55 Definition of terms for encoder triggering

Within the step size there are no readings. Keep this, if measurement averaging is 1 used.

#### 6.10.1 **Triggering the Measured Value Recording**

The current array signal is only further processed after a valid trigger event and the measured values are calculated from this. The measurement data is then transferred for further calculation (e.g. averaging or statistics), as well as the output via a digital or analog interface.

When calculating averages or statistics, measured values immediately before the trigger event cannot be included; instead older measured values are used, which had been entered during previous trigger events.

#### 6.10.2 **Triggering the Measurement Value Output**

The calculation of the measured values is performed continuously and independently of the trigger event. A trigger event only triggers the output of the values via a digital or analog interface.

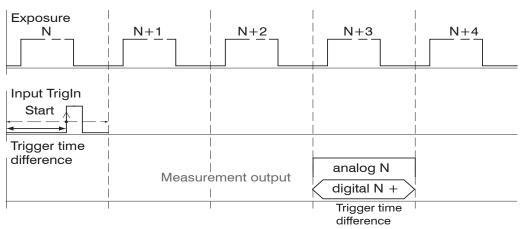
Thus values measured immediately before the trigger event are used when calculating means (averages) or statistics.

The triggering of the measured value recording and output have the same timing.

#### **Trigger Time Difference** 6.10.3

Since the exposure time is not started directly by the trigger input, the respective time difference to the measurement cycle can be output. This measured value can, for example serve to accurately assign measurements to one place, when measuring objects are scanned at a constant speed and when each track starts with a trigger.

The time from the start of the cycle until the trigger event is defined as a trigger time difference. The output of the time determined occurs 3 cycles later, due to the internal processing.



Fields with a grey background require a selection.

Fields with a dark Value

border require the specification of a value.

Fig. 56 Definition of the trigger time difference

- The start of the cycle does not mean the start of the exposure time. There is only a
- fixed difference of 100 ns between the start of the cycle and the end of the exposure time.

# 6.11 Synchronization

If several sensors measure the same target synchronously, the controllers may be synchronized with each other. The sync output of the first controller IFD24x1 Master is connected to the sync inputs of the further controllers, see 4.5.8. Notice the controller timing, see 6.19.

IFD24x1 Master	First controller in the measuring chain; synchronizes any subsequent controllers.
Slave on IFD24xx Master	Controller operates in dependence on the first controller.
Slave on external master	External synchronization. Sync In at the controller is used by an external synchronization source, such as a frequency generator. Min. 0.110 kHz (IFC2451), 0,125 kHz (IFC2461), 0.170 kHz (IFC2471LED) or 0.370 kHz (IFC2471). It is also possible to simultaneously synchronized multiple controllers externally.

If the controllers are operated via an EtherCAT interface, then a synchronization can be realized without a synchronization cable, see A 8.5.

# 6.12 Manage Setups on PC

Use this menu to save a backup copy of the controller data to a PC or to restore backed up setup files to the controller. You can also use this feature to configure an additional controller.

• Save the controller settings, before exporting or importing data, see 5.7.

1		
Data selection for transmission	Setup / material database	Depending on the selected measurement and interface settings, a parameter set contains all controller parameters except for the material database.
Setup no.	1   2   3 8	You can permanently store eight different pa- rameter sets in the controller.
Maintaining inter- face settings	Check box	Interface settings include network properties, such as the baud rate for the RS422 interface.
Select setup	Value	File location (path).

### Step by Step:

- Select the data to be transmitted.
- Define a setup number.
- Select whether the interface settings are affected.

### **Exporting data:**

- Click the Export setup button.
- The Windows dialog box for saving a file opens.
- Enter the file name for the parameter set file (\*.meo), and click OK.

Any currently selected files will be backed up to the PC.

### Importing data:

Click the Browse button.

Click the Import setup button.

The Windows dialog box for selecting a file opens.

The PC starts transferring the file to the controller.



Fields with a grey background require a selection.

Fields with a dark border require the specification of a value.

### 6.13 Extras

Language/S	Sprache	Deutsch / English	Language of the interactive web pages.
Factory settings	Only reset current setup	Check box	Enables the user to replace the currently used setup only.
	Maintain interface settings	Check box	Allows to retain all Ethernet and RS422 interface settings without any changes.

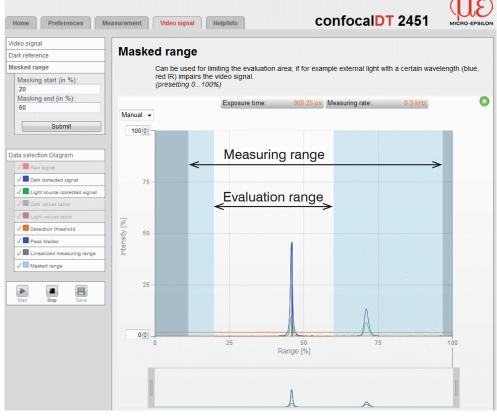
Interface settings are hold when the controller is set to keep current Ethernet and RS422 interface settings.

# 6.14 Masking the Evaluation Range

Masking limits the range that the video signal uses for distance or thickness calculations. This feature is used, for example, if ambient light with certain wavelengths (blue, red, IR) causes video signal interference. It is also possible to mask the background if it reaches into the measuring range.

Masking (start and end) is entered into the two boxes on the left (in %). The factory settings are 0 % (start) and 100 % (end).

• If you limit the video signal area, a peak is detected only, if it lies completely within the masked area, i. e. above the threshold. The measuring range can be reduced thereby.



Fields with a grey background require a
selection.

Fields with a dark border require the specification of a value.

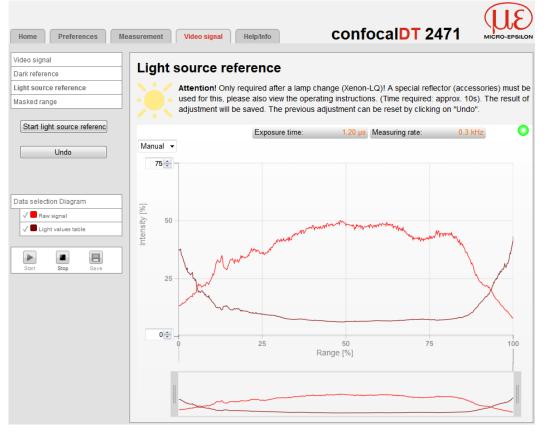
Fig. 57 Limiting the video signal

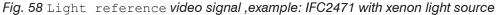
### 6.15 Light Source Reference

A light source reference is performed at the manufacturer's premises (prior to delivery). It also needs to be carried out after changing a Xenon light source (controller IFC2471), see A 3, or the LED light source (controller IFC2451, IFC2461 and IFC2471LED).

#### Step by step:

- Connect the controller with the Xenon light source (using controller IFC2471). Let both devices warm up for approx. 30 minutes.
- Do not connect any sensors. You may need to disconnect the sensor cable from the sensor.
- Perform a dark reference without a sensor, see 5.5. On the controller, press the Dark reference button<sup>1</sup>, or click the Start dark reference button on the web interface (Video signal menu > Dark reference).
- Connect the reflector to the sensor female connection. The reflector is either supplied as part of the Xenon lamp module package, or is sold as optional accessory.
- Perform the light reference. Click the Start light source reference button in the web interface (Video signal menu > Light reference). This may take up to 10 seconds. The result is stored.
- Remove the reflector.
- Observe the video signal, see Fig. 58.
- Perform a dark reference with a sensor, see 5.5.





Click Undo to reset the previous adjustment.

#### 6.16 Help/Info

This page contains information such as the controller's serial and version numbers, stored calibration tables and an address block.

The Save diagnostic file function writes the current controller settings and a list of the calibrated sensors in an ASCII file.

1) After more than 10 seconds, the factory settings will load!

# 6.17 Edit Material Data Bank

### 6.17.1 Create Known Material

Use the Add material button to add values to or delete values from the controller material database. Adding new material requires either the refractive index and the Abbe number vd or three refractive index numbers for wavelengths (even if they more or less coincide).

Home Preferences M	easurement Video signal Help/Info	confocalDT 2451	MICRO-EPSILON
Login	Settings > Material database > Material parameter input		Save Setup
Measurement program	Material parameter input		
Sensor	waterial parameter input		
Exposure mode / measuring rate	Material name:		
Detection threshold	Material description:		
Averaging / error handling / spike correction / statistics	Description by:	Three refractive indices -	
Zeroing / mastering	nF at 486nm:	1.000000	
Material database	Nd at 587nm:	1.000000	
Material parameter input	nC at 656nm:	1.000000	
	Abbe value vd:	1.000000	
Digital interfaces			
Switching outputs			
Analog output		Submit	
Output-data rate			

Fig. 59 Input mask for material-specific refractive indices

### 6.17.2 Create Unknown Material

- Before you can determine the refractive indices of material with unknown object properties, the exact thickness of the material must be known. The pattern should as far as possible not much thicker than the minimum measurable thickness of the sensor type, i.e. approximately 10 ... 20 % of the measuring range, and exactly coplanar.
- Confirm the button Add material in menu Material data base.
- Duplicate the refractive indices of the material BK7 e.g. in a transparent measuring object as a first approximation.

The more similar the refractive indices of the unknown object and the starting material, the faster and more accurately you determine the refractive indices.

The three refractive indices at different wave lengths are needed for the new material.

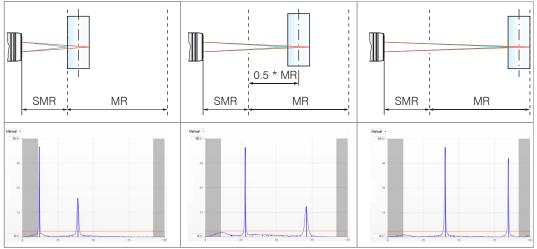


Fig. 60 Video signal at start of measuring range (SMR), midrange (MMR) and end of measuring range (EMR) for determination of refractive indices

- Move the measuring object with the front edge to start of measuring range, see Fig. 60.
- Change to Measurement tab and note the current thickness value.
- Move the measuring object to midrange and note the current thickness value at midrange.

- Move the measuring object with the rear edge to start of measuring range and note the current thickness value at end of measuring range.
- Calculate the respective refractive indices using the following formula, the nominal thickness and the three measured thicknesses.

	$n_{\text{new,MBx}} = \frac{n_{1,\text{MBx}} \star D_{\text{NOM}}}{D_{\text{ACT,MBx}}}$	n <sub>new, MBx</sub>	Refractive index, new material at SMR, MMR and EMR
		n <sub>1, MBx</sub>	Refractive index, raw material at SMR, MMR and EMR
		D <sub>Nom</sub>	Nominal thickness (exact thickness of the used measuring object)
		D ACT MBX	Actual thickness (the thickness of measuring object displayed by measurement system) at SMR, MMR and EMR

Fig. 61 Formula for determination of the refractive indices

- Change to the Material database menu and replace the refractive indices by the calculated values. The refractive indices for start of measuring range, midrange and end of measuring range correspond the 3 refractive indices nF, nd and nC in a rough approximation.
- Change to the Measurement tab and check the thickness values for start of measuring range, midrange and end of measuring range.
- Repeat steps to increase the accuracy of the refractive indices.

# 6.18 Different Peak Selection in the Thickness Measurement Program

This function is used, if a material generates peaks in front of or between the applied peaks caused by thin layers on the measurement object. This function should be used with care and exclusively by product specialists.

Measurement Video signal Help/In	fo confocalDT 2451
Preferences > Measurement program	Save Setup
Measurement program	
Measurement to be effected:	Thickness measurement
Used peak:	Highest and second highest peak
Use refractive corrdction:	Yes
Selection of material:	Vacuum
	Submit
	Subinit
Distance measurement	
Distance to the first surface	
	vo peaks
	Preferences > Measurement program Measurement to be effected: Used peak: Use refractive corrdction: Selection of material: Distance measurement

Fig. 62 Advanced measurement program with individual peak selection

The selection of the peaks determines which areas in the signal are used for the distance or thickness measurement. If a measurement object contains multiple transparent layers, a correct measurement result is determined only for the first peak (distance measurement) and the first two peaks (thickness measurement).

Distance measurement	Thickness measurement
first peak	first and second peak
last peak	first and last peak
highest peak	second to last and last peak
	highest and second highest peak

Fig. 63 Menu items used peaks

The determination of the peak heights is performed using the light corrected signal. In the following example the thickness is measured between the highest and second highest peak.

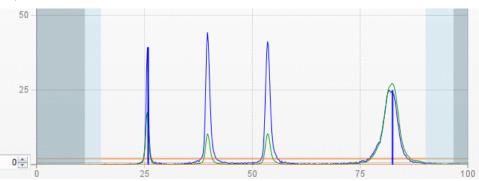


Fig. 64 Extract of a video signal with multiple peaks in the measuring range

By default the refractive correction is performed. If more than two peaks are within the measuring range, an exact refractive correction is performed with the same amount of peaks only.

Example: 3 peaks, the first or the last peak leaves the measuring range sometimes. Switch off the refractive correction, because the refractive correction is applied on a different layer, a clear assignment of the material is not possible.

# 6.19 Timing, Measurement Value Flux

The controller operates in cycles for measuring and processing:

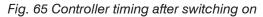
- 1. Exposure: Charging the incoming light in the spectrometer/receiver,
- 2. Conversion of the video signal as digital values,
- 3. Computing the distance and thickness, average and so on,
- 4. Measurement output.

The measured value N is available after three cycles on the output.

The processing of the cycles occurs sequentially in time and parallel in space (pipelining). After another cycle the next measurement value (N + 1) is output.

Each cycle takes about 200  $\mu$ s at a measuring rate of 5 kHz. The delay between the input reaction and the output signal is therefore about 600  $\mu$ s for this measuring rate.

Cycle	1. (N)	2. (N+1)	3. (N+2)	4. (N+3)
Time	200 µs	400 µs	600 µs	800 µs
1. Layer	Exposure N	Conversion N	Computing N	Output N
2. Layer		Exposure N+1	Conversion N+1	Computing N+1
3. Layer			Exposure N+2	Conversion N+2
4. Layer				Exposure N+3



The measured value is available 3 cycles after the incoming trigger signal with active triggering.

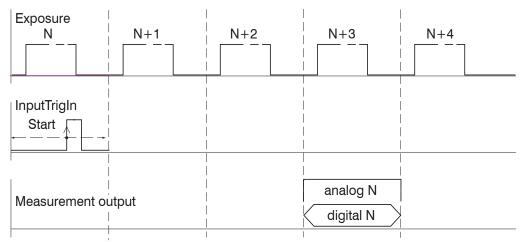


Fig. 66 Timing with triggering, rising edge, one value

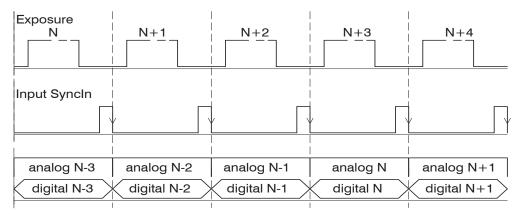


Fig. 67 Timing with synchronization, steady state

# 7. Errors, Repairs

# 7.1 Troubleshooting

### 7.1.1 Web Interface Communication

If an error page is displayed in the web browser, please check the following:

- Check if the controller is connected correctly, see 5.1.
- Check the IP configuration for PC and controller, and check if sensorTOOL can locate the controller, see 5.2.1.

If controller and PC are connected directly, IP address detection may take up to 2 minutes.

 Check the proxy settings. If the controller uses a separate network adapter to connect to the PC, you need to disable the use of a proxy server for this connection. Contact your network specialist or administrator!

### 7.1.2 Distance Measurements

- If the Range LED does not come on, even though a target object is positioned within range, check the following.
- The cable connections of the optical fibers and the sensor cable are plugged fully into the controller's cable socket.
- The sensor is sending out a light beam, and the light is visible on the target object.
- The target object is positioned within the measuring range, see 4.7.7.
- The sensor is aligned vertically to the target object. Local measuring point increases (ie. angle between the optical axis and the target object's vertical straight) do not exceed the maximum sensor tilt angle.
- The lowest measuring rate is selected, and Distance is set as measurement type.
- The dark signal was captured correctly.
- Check the video signal: is only one peak above the recognition threshold?

### 7.1.3 Thickness Measurements

- If zero (0) comes up as a result for thickness measurements (error), please check the following:
- The thickness of the target object must correspond to the sensor's measuring range limits, see 4.7.7.
- The target object must be sufficiently transparent.
- The surfaces should not be anti-glare, as the coating allows only for minimum reflection.
- Optical axis and target object surface are perpendicular.
- The lowest measuring rate is selected.
- Both surfaces of the target object must be positioned within the measuring range, see Fig. 28.
- Check the video signal: are two peaks above the recognition threshold?

### 7.2 Changing the Sensor Cable for IFS2405 and IFS2406 Sensors

- Disconnect the protective sleeve from the sensor.
- Remove the damaged sensor cable. Loosen the swivel nut of the connector. Carefully peel off the adhesive protection and then pull out the connector
- Guide the new sensor cable through the protective sleeve.
- Remove the protective cap on the sensor cable and keep it.



- Guide the locking pin of the sensor cable into the connector cavity.
- Screw together the sensor's connector and socket ends.



- Screw the protective sleeve back onto the sensor.
- Run the dark reference, see 5.5.

## 7.3 Changing the Protective Glass for IFS2405 and IFS2406 Sensors

Changing the protective glass is required for

- irreversible pollution.
- scratches.
- $\stackrel{\bullet}{l}$  Do not use the sensor without a protective glass, because this leads to a lower measurement accuracy.

### 7.3.1 IFS2405/IFS2406

Loose the front socket with the protective glass from the sensor.



- Remove the seal and place the O-ring into the frame groove of the new socket.
- Screw the new socket with the protective glass back onto the sensor.

### 7.3.2 IFS2406/90-2.5

Loose the grub screws on the sensor, see Fig. 68, and slide the protective glass aside, see Fig. 69.





Fig. 69 View on sensor from below

Slide the new protective glass flush back and clamp the protective glass with the two grub screws again firmly.

# 8. Software Update

#### **Requirements for software update**

Connect the controller ("Ethernet" female connector) to a PC using an Ethernet direct connection (LAN). Use a LAN cable with RJ-45 connectors.

 $\stackrel{\bullet}{l}$  A software update does not affect the parameter settings. Newly added parameters are set to default values.

#### Update

You will find the latest firmware update tool <code>Update\_Sensor\_Ethernet.exe</code> on our website:

www.micro-epsilon.com/download/software/confocalCDT Update Sensor Ethernet.zip

You can get the latest firmware under www.micro-epsilon.com/service/download/software/ in the section confocalDT - Confocal Sensors.

If you have any questions, please feel free to contact the relevant sales person in our company.

# 9. Software Support with MEDAQLib

The Micro-Epsilon Data Acquisition Library offers you a high level interface library to access confocal displacement sensors from your Windows application in combination with

- RS422/USB converter (optional accessory) and a suitable SC2471-x/USB/IND cable or
- IF2008 PCI interface card and SC2471-x/IF2008 cable or
- Ethernet

into an existing or a customized PC software.

You need no knowledge about the controller protocol to communicate with the individual controllers. The individual commands and parameters for the controller to be addressed will be set with abstract functions. MEDAQLib translates the abstract functions in comprehensible instructions for the controller.

#### MEDAQLib

- contains a DLL, which can be imported into C, C++, VB, Delphi and many additional programs,
- makes data conversion for you,
- works independent of the used interface type,
- features by identical functions for the communication (commands),
- provides a consistent transmission format for all MICRO-EPSILON sensors.

For C/C++ programmers MEDAQLib contains an additional header file and a library file,

You will find the latest driver / program routine at:

www.micro-epsilon.com/download www.micro-epsilon.com/link/software/medaqlib

# 10. Software Support with IFD2451/2461/2471 Tool

The software IFD2451/2461/2471 Tool

- transfers, reads and saves measurements
- supports controller configuration by calling up the web interface.

All data are transmitted through Ethernet or RS422 interface and can be saved on demand.

- Disconnect or connect the D-sub connection between RS422 and USB converter
- ${f l}$  when the controller is disconnected from power supply only.

# 10.1 System Requirements

The following system requirements are recommended:

- Windows XP, Windows Vista or Windows 7 (32 or 64 bit) / Intel Core 2 Duo, 3 GHz / 1 GB RAM
- Ethernet port, USB port or IF2008

# 10.2 Cable and Program Routine Requirements

with RS422	with Ethernet
<ul> <li>SC2471-x/USB/IND Sensor cable with RS422-USB converter and 24 V power supply</li> </ul>	LAN cable
- RS422/USB converter, inclusive CD with driver	

You will find the actual drivers or program routines under:

www.micro-epsilon.com/download/software/confocalDT\_2451\_Tool\_Setup.zip

www.micro-epsilon.com/download/software/confocalDT\_2461\_Tool\_Setup.zip

www.micro-epsilon.com/download/software/confocalDT\_2471\_Tool\_Setup.zip

You will find details to the driver installation in the mounting instructions "Converter RS422 to USB".

# 10.3 Measurement

This sub program can be used to acquire, evaluate and store data from an IFC24x1 controller.

IFD2471 DAQ Tool V3.3.1 - Measurement File Extras Sprache/Language ?						
			cc	onfocal	)T 2471	MICRO-EPSILON
Connection           Interface:         TCP/IP           IP address:         169.254.168.150	Reading(mm) 110.01000	Readi	ng	mm		Intensity
	86.00800					
Search Info Connect Disconnect	62.00600					
Measurement Autozero (Software): Set Reset Perspective: Normales Signal V	38.00400					
Data reduction: Mittelung 1	14.00200					
Start DAQ Stop daq Snapshot Protocol	-10.00000	380.920	382.917	384.913	386.910	388.906
Data Storage			III			Þ
C:\Users\11000086\MICRO-EPSILON\Docume	Display			s (Software)		
Add date and time to filename Lines per file: 30000	X-range: 10.0000 s Y axis: Automatisch	X-scroll buffer: 100 V area: 0.100	s Peak-Peak: 00 Counter:		Max: Min:	Mean: Value:
File-Format: CSV Englisch 🔻	Status:				Protoc	col Clear Status

# 11. Disclaimer

All components of the device have been checked and tested for functionality in the factory. However, should any defects occur despite careful quality control, these shall be reported immediately to MICRO-EPSILON or to your distributor / retailer.

MICRO-EPSILON undertakes no liability whatsoever for damage, loss or costs caused by or related in any way to the product, in particular consequential damage, e.g., due to

- non-observance of these instructions/this manual,
- improper use or improper handling (in particular due to improper installation, commissioning, operation and maintenance) of the product,
- repairs or modifications by third parties,
- the use of force or other handling by unqualified persons.

This limitation of liability also applies to defects resulting from normal wear and tear (e.g., to wearing parts) and in the event of non-compliance with the specified maintenance intervals (if applicable).

MICRO-EPSILON is exclusively responsible for repairs. It is not permitted to make unauthorized structural and / or technical modifications or alterations to the product. In the interest of further development, MICRO-EPSILON reserves the right to modify the design.

In addition, the General Terms of Business of MICRO-EPSILON shall apply, which can be accessed under Legal details | Micro-Epsilon https://www.micro-epsilon.com/impressum/.

For translations into other languages, the German version shall prevail.

# 12. Service, Repair

If the sensor, sensor cable or the controller is defective:

- If possible, save the current sensor settings in a parameter set, see 6.12, to reload them into the sensor after the repair.
- Please send us the affected parts for repair or exchange.

If the cause of a fault cannot be clearly identified, please send the entire measuring system to: MICRO-EPSILON MESSTECHNIK GmbH & Co. KG Koenigbacher Str. 15 94496 Ortenburg / Germany

Tel. +49 (0) 8542 / 168-0 Fax +49 (0) 8542 / 168-90 info@micro-epsilon.com www.micro-epsilon.com

# 13. Decommissioning, Disposal

- Remove the sensor cable as well as the controller's supply and output cables. Insert the dummy connectors.
- Remove the optical fiber cable that connects controller and external light source. Insert the dummy connectors.

Incorrect disposal may cause harm to the environment.

Dispose of the device, its components and accessories, as well as the packaging materials in compliance with the applicable country-specific waste treatment and disposal regulations of the region of use.

# Appendix

# A 1 Accessories, Services

### Accessories IFS2402, IFS2403

CE2402-x	Sensor cable extension for IFS2402 sensors, length $x = 3 m$ , 10 m, 30 m, 50 m
CE2402-x/PT	Sensor with protective tubing, length $x = 3$ or 10 m, costumer-specific up to 50 m

### Accesories IFS2404

# Accessories IFS2405, IFS2406, IFS2407-0,1

### C2401 cable with FC/APC and E2000/APC connectors

C2401-x	Optical fiber (length $x = 3 \text{ m}, 5 \text{ m}, 10 \text{ m}$ , customer-specific length up to 50 m)
C2401/PT3-x	Optical fiber with metallic protection tube for mechanical stress (length $x = 0.23$ m, 0.3 m, 1 m, 3 m, 5 m, 10 m, 15 m, customer-specific length up to 50 m)
C2401-x(01)	Optical fiber core diameter 26 $\mu$ m (length x = 3 m, 5 m, 15 m)
C2401-x(10)	Drag-chain suitable optical fiber (length $x = 3 \text{ m}, 5 \text{ m}, 10 \text{ m}$ )

### C2400 cable with 2x FC/APC connector

C2400-x	Optical fiber (length $x = 3 m, 5 m, 10 m$ , customer-specific length up to 50 m)
C2400/PT-x	Optical fiber with protection tube for mechanical stress (length $x = 3 m$ , 5 m, 10 m, customer-specific length up to 50 m)
C2400/PT-x.Vac	Optical fiber with protection tube suitbale for use in vacuum (length $x = 3 m$ , 5 m, 10 m, customer-specific length up to 50 m)

### Installation bracket

MA2400-27	Installation bracket for IFS2405-0,3 / IFS2405-1 / IFS2406-3 / IFS2406-10 sensors
MA2402-4	Installation bracket for IFS2402-x sensors
MA2403-8	Installation bracket for IFS2403-x sensors
MA2404-12	Installation bracket for IFS2404-x / IFS2407-0,1/ IFS2407-0,8 sensors
MA2405-34	Installation bracket for IFS2405-3 sensors
MA2405-40	Installation bracket for IFS2405-6 / IFS2405/90-6 sensors
MA2405-54	Installation bracket for IFS2405-10 / IFS2407-3 sensors
MA2405-62	Installation bracket for IFS2405-28, IFS2405-30 sensors
MA2406-20	Installation bracket for IFS2406-2,5 sensors
JMA-xx	Adjustable Mounting Adapter, see A 5

### Accessories IFS2407/90-0,3

C2407-x Optical fiber with DIN connector and E2000/APC (2 m, 5 m)

# Accessories light source

IFL24x1/LED	Lamp module for IFC24x1
IFL2451/LED(003)	Lamp module for IFC2451(003) with heat sink
IFX2471/Xe/75	External xenon light source for IFC2471 controller
IFX2471/Xe/75 lamp module	Exchangeable, completely adjusted lamp module for the IFX2471 xenon light source
CL2471-1/Xe	Light source cable, 1 m
Optical fiber reflector	Reflector for E2000/APC

Other accessories	
SC2471-x/IF2008	Interface cable for interface IF2008, length $x = 3 m$ , 10 m or 20 m
SC2471-x/RS422/OE	Interface cable for interface IF2030, length $x = 3 m$ , 10 m
SC2471-3/IF2008ETH	Interface cable for interface IF2008/ETH, length 3 m
IF2001/USB	Converter RS422 to USB, type IF2001/USB, useable for cable SC2471-x/RS422/OE, inclusive driver, connections: 1× female connector 10-pin (cable clamp) type Würth 691361100010, 1x female connector 6-pin (cable clamp) type Würth 691361100006
IF2008/PCIE	Interface card IF2008/PCIE to capture four digital sensor signals synchronously, confocalDT 2421/2422/2451/2461/2471 series and two encoders. In conjunction with IF2008E a total of six digital signals, two encoders, two analog signals and eight I/O signals can be captured synchronously.
IF2008/ETH	8-fold RS422/Ethernet converter with industrial M12 plug/socket to connect up to 8 IFC242x/2451/2461/2471 controllers
IF2030/PNET	Interface component to connect an IFC242x/2451/2461/2471 controller to Profinet, housing for top-hat rail, software integration into PLC with GSDML file, certified according to PNIO V2.33
PS2020	Power supply unit for DIN rail mounting, input 230 VAC, output 24 VDC/2.5 A
EC2471-3/OE	Encoder cabel, 3 m
Vacuum feed trough	
C2402/Vac/KF16	Vacuum feed trough for optical fiber, 1 channel, vacuum side FC/APC non-vacuum side E2000/APC, clamping flange type KF 16
C2405/Vac/1/KE16	Vacuum feed through on both sides EC/APC socket 1 channel, clamping flange type KE 16

C2405/Vac/1/KF16Vacuum feed through on both sides FC/APC socket, 1 channel, clamping flange type KF 16C2405/Vac/1/CF16Vacuum feed through on both sides FC/APC socket, 1 channel, flange type CF 16

C2405/Vac/6/CF63 Vacuum feed through for optical fiber, on both sides FC/APC socket, 6 channels, flange type CF 63

# Services:

- Linearity tests and adjustments for the confocalDT measuring system
- Calibration of the confocalDT measuring system
- Exchange of lamp at the xenon light source IFX2471 or on removable lamp module

# A 2 Factory Settings

User group: Professional; password: 000	Measuring program: Distance measurements
Measurement averaging: none	Video averaging: none
Statistics: all measured values	Troubleshooting: Error output
Data selection: Distance 1	Select digital out: Displayed as web diagram
RS422: 115.200K Baud	Ethernet: Static IP
Trigger mode: no trigger	Switching output 1: Error intensity
Language: de	Switching output 2: Error measuring range
Synchronization: No synchronization	Exposure mode: Automatic mode

# A 3 Xenon Light Source IFX2471

# A 3.1 Warnings

Dangerous high voltage within the Xenon light source. Maintenance of the light source must be carried out by qualified personnel only.

> Risk of injuries

Do not remove any safety devices.

- > Risk of injuries
- > Risk of insecure operation

The Xenon light source produces UV radiation.

> Risk of eye injuries

Do not look directly into the light source. Use appropriate eye protection.

Avoid shock and vibration to the Xenon light source.

> Damage or destruction of the Xenon light source

 $\overset{\bullet}{l}$  Read all safety and operating instructions, before you start using the Xenon light source.

# A 3.2 Functionality

The external light source uses a 75 W Xenon short arc lamp with an output performance of approx. 250  $\mu$ W (values may vary depending on the measurement device). The optical axis has an integrated heat protection filter that is permeable to light.

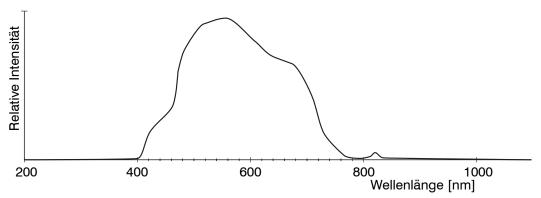


Fig. 70 Spectral distribution of the Xenon light source

To ensure optimum performance, the replaceable lamp module is accurately aligned for coupling into an optical fiber cable with a 50  $\mu$ m fiber core and a E2000 connector. This is the reason why the Xenon lamp within the lamp module must be replaced by the manufacturer. It is not possible to manually restrict the light intensity, but controller IFC2471 can control the light exposure time. The average life span of a Xenon lamp is approximately 2000 hours, but may be less depending on frequency of operation and ambient temperature.

### NOTICE

# A 3.3 Unpacking, Items Included in Delivery, Accessories and Installation

Check for completeness and any signs of transport damage immediately after unpacking. If your delivery is damaged or incomplete, please contact the manufacturer or your supplier without delay. Never use a damaged Xenon light source.

#### Items included in delivery

Xenon light source IFX2471, including power supply and status 2418002 cable 1m (Binder M8, 4-pin)

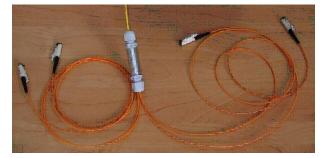
#### **Optional accessories**

1

mance.

CL2471-1/Xe; optical fiber cable; 1 m; one cable to connect one 2570001 controller

CL2471-1/Xe/Y4; optical fiber cable; 1 m; four cables to connect 2570002 up to 4 controllers (optical performance slightly reduced)



Replaceable, pre-aligned lamp module

2418021

lamp Use this device in a clean environment. Dust particles on the fiber can reduce perfor-

Optical fiber reflector for bright referencing after changing a

The IFX2471 Xenon light source is ready for DIN rail mounting. Do not cover any ventilation holes during installation. To ensure sufficient air flow, you will need a space of 150 mm or more between the top of the Xenon light source and any adjacent objects.

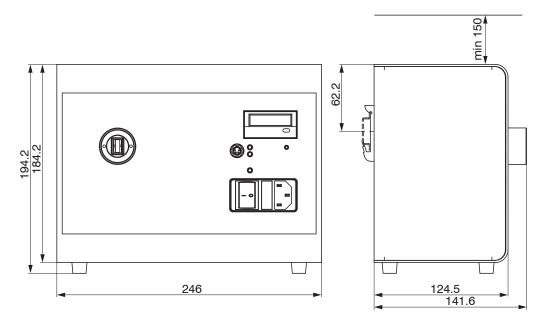


Fig. 71 Dimension drawing of Xenon light source IFX2471

Delivery includes a spring-loaded mechanical protection cover within the fiber connector and a dummy connector. It is recommended that you remove the dummy connector to connect a fiber only when the device is switched off. Avoid any direct eye contact with the other fiber end. 1

# A 3.4 Tips for Operation

Handle the optical fiber cable with extreme caution. Please note the following:

- Never kink the optical fiber cable. This will permanently damage the cable.
- Do not fall short of the minimum bending radius when laying the optical fiber cable. This may impact performance.

Minimum bending radius: 30 mm (fixed), 40 mm (permanent flexible)

- Leave the optical fiber cable connected; avoid frequent connecting and disconnecting to prevent dust from damaging the mating connector.
- Do not touch, contaminate or scratch the polished exit portal of the fiber (face of the ceramic ferrule). Clean only using pure alcohol and a cleaning cloth for optical surfaces.

The connector cannot be repolished. Re-confectioning or a new cable will be required.

### A 3.5 Technical Data

Description	confocalDT IFX2471		
Connector type	E2000		
Glass fiber cable	Step index fiber 50 $\mu$ m core / 125 $\mu$ m cladding		
Optical performance	approx. 250 $\mu$ W at the fiber connector (with 650 nm)		
Warm-up time	$\leq$ 30 min (95 % of full performance after approx. 2 min)		
Stability (optical performance)	~ 1 %		
Lamp life (manufacturer's specifications)	1000 hours (average life span: 2000 hours)		
Long-term stability (loss of power)	50 % (for lamp life)		
Wavelength range	400800 nm, heat protection filter for IR range		
Power supply	Wide range input 100 250 VAC, 50 60 Hz; 105 W, fine-wire fuse mains switch 5 x 20 mm; 2 A (Littlefuse, series 213)		
Cover dimensions (wxhxd)	246 x 195 x 125 mm		
Weight	3.84 kg		
Protection rating	IP 40		
Operating temperature	5 °C to 40 °C		
Storage temperature	-20 °C to 60 °C (up to 70 °C for very short periods, reduces life span)		
CE Conformity	Low Voltage Directive 2006/95/EC, EN 61010, EMC standards: DIN EN 61326-1, DIN EN 55011, DIN EN 61000-6-2		

A 3.6

# **Operating Elements** 2 3 on confocalD1 4 1 5 6 7 8 9 10 11

1	Light exit socket. The socket is designed for E2000 fiber connectors. The dummy connector is used to prevent any direct eye contact with the light beam. Before switching on the light source, plug in the 50 $\mu$ m fiber cable. Avoid any direct eye contact with the other fiber end.						
2	Status socket (Binder M8, series 718). For the included status cable to transmit Lifetime and Overheat LED information to the outside (e.g. to the base unit).						
3	Operating hours counter for the Xenon lamp. Counter service life is 1500 hours, after that the Lifetime LED will light up.						
4, 6	Operating hours reset switch for use after changing the lamp module.						
5	Lifetime LED (red). Permanently on if a Xenon lamp exceeds its life span of 1500 hours. The Xenon lamp will continue to work. The average life span is approx. 2000 hours, but may be less depending on frequency of operation and ambient temperature.						
7	Overheat LED (red). If this LED is permanently on, this indicates that the Xenon lamp was switched off temporarily due to overheating. Check the ventilation holes. Caution: Power supply has not been switched off, electrical components are still working. The lamp will start to work again when it has cooled down sufficiently. A flashing LED indicates that the Xenon lamp is defective, and the lamp module must be replaced.						
8	Power LED (green). Indicates that the power supply is on.						
9	Power switch. When the power switch is switched on, the device is supplied with power. The Power LED is on. Caution: Frequent switch use will reduce the life span of the Xenon lamp.						
10	Fuses. This area contains fuses that protect the device from overload. Type: fine wire 5 x 20 mm; 2 A; idle fuse.						
11	Socket for power cable. Input voltage 100 250 VAC. 50/60 Hz						

	Pin	Assignment
3 1	1	Overheat (collector)
	2	Overheat (emitter)
$\left  \begin{array}{c} 1 \\ 0 \end{array} \right ^{4} \right ^{4} \left  \begin{array}{c} 2 \\ 0 \end{array} \right ^{4} \right ^{2} \left  \begin{array}{c} 2 \\ 0 \end{array} \right ^{4} \left  \left  \begin{array}{c} 2 \\ 0 \end{array} \right ^{4} \left  \left  \begin{array}{c} 2 \\ 0 \end{array} \right ^{4} \left  \left  \left  \begin{array}{c} 2 \\ 0 \end{array} \right ^{4} \left  \left  \left  \begin{array}{c} 2 \\ 0 \end{array} \right ^{4} \left  $	3	Lifetime (collector)
	4	Lifetime (emitter)

Fig. 72 Status socket pin assignment

The status outputs are internally unwired opto-coupler outputs.

# A 3.7 Changing the Xenon Lamp Module

before replacing it.

# Caution: While the light source is in operation, the module can reach a temperature of approx. 250°C. Risk of burns. Please let the module cool down for at least 20 minutes,

- You must disconnect the power cable, before opening the cover.
- Disconnect the status and the fiber cables, and put on the protective caps.
- Unscrew the four screws (1) on the top and bottom of the light source, see Fig. 73



Fig. 73 Xenon light source from the outside

- Pull the cover forward, until it comes off.
- Carefully disconnect the green connector (3), see Fig. 74.
- Manually disconnect and remove the four knurled screws (2) with caution. Remove the lamp module.

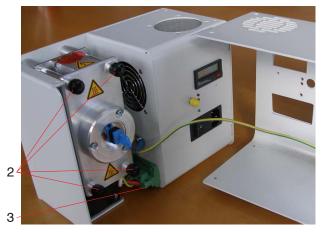


Fig. 74 Open Xenon light source with lamp module

- Remove the 4 retaining rings on the bolts of the new lamp module.
- Insert the new lamp module. Be careful to prevent any knocks to the fiber connector, as they could cause a loss of alignment. Use the knurled screws to attach the lamp module, and reinsert the green connector.
- Assemble the cover, and place the ground connector in the open space.

### Resetting the operating hours counter

Plug in the power plug and the fiber cable, and turn the light source back on.



- Fig. 75 Operating time counter on the front of the Xenon light source
- Use a tool (such as a pen) to keep the switch (5) on the front of the light source pressed, see Fig. 75. At the same time, press the red button (4) twice.

The operating hours are reset to 0.00.

In the controller, perform a light reference, see 6.15.

### A 3.8 Change Fuses

The xenon light source contain two micro-fuses (5 x 20 mm) in the power entry element, 2 A (Littlefuse, series 213).



- Remove the mains cable (1).
- Pull the fuse holder (2) out. Use a screw driver.



- Rotate the fuse holder to the right (3).
- Replace the damaged fuses (4). Use a flat nose plier.
- Close the fuse holder.

# A 3.9 Troubleshooting

Error	Possible causes	Solutions
Lamp performance of the fiber strongly de- creases.	Fiber face(s) are dirty.	Clean fiber faces with alcohol and a cleaning cloth for optical surfaces.
	Fiber faces are damaged.	Replace fiber cable.
	Fiber was kinked.	Replace fiber cable.
	Knocks caused loss of adjustment to the fiber coupling.	Replace lamp module, or send device in for repair.
	Lamp is too old.	Replace lamp module.
Xenon lamp does not come on. Power switch	No power supply.	Check power supply.
is on, but no LED is coming on.	Fuse has blown.	Replace the fuse.
Xenon lamp is not com- ing on, Overheat LED is permanently on.	Overheated.	Do not cover any ventilation holes, if necessary, reduce ambient temperature, wait.
	Overheating repeatedly due to defective fan.	Send the device in for repair.
Xenon lamp is not com- ing on, Overheat LED is flashing.	Internal green connector is not connected properly.	Disconnect the power plug, open the cover, plug in the con- nector.
	Xenon lamp is defective.	Replace lamp module.



Electric shock. Unplug the power cable to disconnect the light source from the mains power supply.

# A 4 Multilayer Measurement, Controller IFC24x1MP

# A 4.1 User Interface

### A 4.1.1 General, Settings / Measuring Program

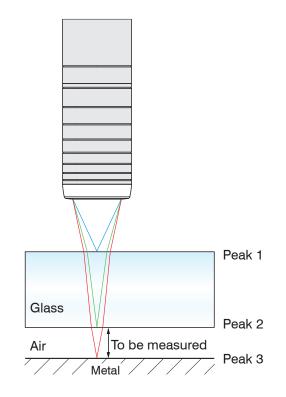
When measuring through transparent layers, each boundary area between two materials with a visually different density will reflect a part of the light.

As refraction of the rays varies, all materials (refractive index) must be known.

To safely separate peaks within the video signal, the individual layers must not be too thin in relation to the measuring range (guide value: minimum layer thickness > approx. 10 % of the measuring range, does not apply to miniature and hybrid sensors).

All peaks must be within the measuring range to ensure that thickness can be calculated correctly.

Fig. 76 Example of a measurement task: Number of expected peaks: in this instance 3 (possible maximum of 6)



Home Preferences Me	easurement V	Video signal Help/Info	confoc	al <mark>DT</mark> 2471:	
Login	Preferences > Measureme	ent program		[	Save Setup
Measurement program Sensor Exposure mode / measuring rate Detection threshold Averaging / error handling /	Measur Number	ent program rement to be effected: er of expected peaks: fractive correction:	Multilayer measurement	×	
statistics Zeroing / mastering Material database	Materia	al between peak 1 and 2: al between peak 2 and 3:	Yes Bk7 Vacuum	•	
Digital interfaces Switching outputs Analog output Output-data rate			Submit		
Encoder inputs Trigger mode Synchronization	Distance	ce measurement e to the first surface			
Load / save settings Extras		ess measurement iss of one layer – distance betwee	en the first two peaks		
3	0 selectab 1 Use refra recomm 1.0).	ble distances for up to 6 peaks ractive correction is the default s	etting if the expected number of peak prection since no unique mapping of ad to correct the distances.		
St	tate: OK				

Define materials: here refractive correction of BK7 between peaks 1 and 2 plus vacuum between peaks 2 and 3.

### Deactivating refractive correction

A variety of factors can cause the measurement device to recognize less peaks than expected (in this example 2 peaks instead of 3, see Fig. 76):

- 1 The last peak is located behind the linearized measuring range, the masked range of the CCD line or not in the CCD line at all.
- 2 The first peak is located in front of the linearized measuring range, the masked range of the CCD line or not in the CCD line at all.
- 3 The distance between any two peaks is too small, the peaks converge and can not be separated.

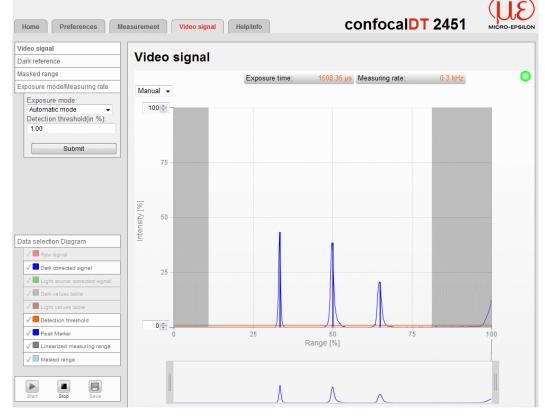
At (1) it is possible to allocate glass as material to the correct area and to perform accurate refractive correction. At (2) and (3) errors are introduced due to incorrect material allocation.

If only (1) appears because of your measurement arrangement, you can use the default setting: "Use refractive correction: Yes"

Refractive correction is performed, any existing values are displayed, and missing measurement values receive an error status.

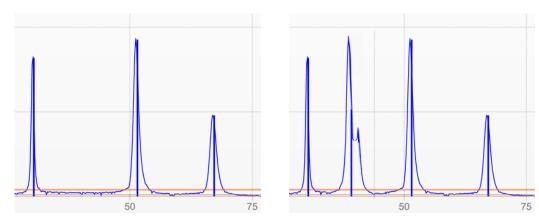
If you don't know the cause but want to analyze at least the peaks for which no refractive correction was performed, you deactivate refractive correction. In this case all measurement values are calculated using a refractive correction of 1.0 (vacuum/air), while any material settings are ignored. Again, any missing measurement values receive an error status.

If more than the required peaks are recognized, any additional peaks are ignored. For error-free allocation of refractive correction, please ensure that the first peak in your measurement arrangement always falls within the measuring range and that no two peaks converge.



# A 4.1.2 Video Signal for Multilayer Measurements

Fig. 77 Video signal, example using 3 peaks



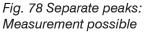


Fig. 79 Peaks into each other: Measurement inaccuracy probably

If a layer is too thin, two peaks lie near together or into each other. Please note that two approaching peaks, see Fig. 79, will influence each other's values.

If the video signal displays peaks with extreme height differences, go forward as follows:

- Change to "manual" exposure mode and
- increase the exposure time.

# A 4.1.3 Measurements (Measurement Values Versus Time Diagram)

				ement	measure	Multilayer	easured values Multilayer easurement
	0.040400 mm	Distance 0:	4 750400 mm			Distance 1:	lect measuring program
	2.642132 mm	Distance 3:	1.758129 mm		0.981023 mm		aterial settings
	N/A	Difference 3 / 4:	0.884003 mm	Difference 2 / 3:		Difference 1 / 2:	astering / Zeroing
	0.658891 mm		1.435507 mm	Statistics max:		Statistics min:	Set master value
s	95.1331 s	Timestamp	0.3 kHz	Measuring rate:	728.1 µs	Exposure time:	Mastering is INACTIVE
						Manual 👻	
Peakintensit						3,2 🚔	eraging
						3.0	Video averaging
100%						2.9	Recursive average of 8 vide -
90% -						2.7	Measurement averaging
						2.6	No averaging -
80% -							Submit
70% -						E 2.3	
70% -						2.1 1.9	
60% -						[uuu 2.3] 2.1] anline 1.9 1.8 1.6 1.5 1.3	a selection Diagram
		Ϋ́́				1.6	✓ Distance 1
50% -						nse 1.5	Distance 1
						W 1.3	
40% -						1.2	J Distance 3
30%						1.0	Jifference 1/2
						0.8	Jifference 2/3
20% -						0.7	J Difference 3 / 4
						0.5	
10% -						0.4	
0%						0.2	Start Stop Save
1 2 3						0,05 🜩	
	97 99	92 94	86 89 [S] 26,42	81 84 Time	76 78	73	Reset statistics
			[5] 20,42	TIME			

You can hide and display selected values within the diagram.

Use "Data Selection Diagram" to select measurement values. Statistic values always refer to the first parameter (data selection 1).

			Data selection	1	
Home	Preferences	Measurement	Video signal Help.Info	confocalDT 2451	MICRO-EPSILON
measuremen	uring program	Data Sel	Lection Diagram Data selection 1: Signal for statistics calculation Data selection 2: Data selection 3: Data selection 4: Data selection 5: Data selection 6: Data selection 7: Data selection 8:	Difference 2 / 3 Distance 1 Distance 2 Distance 3   Submit	
		20 C		@ MICRO	ERSH ON Onlying 204

confocalDT 24x1

Name	State	Description
LED 1 Intensity	Red	Intensity too high, at least one of the peaks is in satura- tion.
	Yellow	Intensity too low, at least one of the peaks is below the recognition threshold.
	Green	Signal ok
LED 2 Range	Red	Focus of too less ( <n) (or="" linearized="" masked)="" peaks="" range.<="" td="" the="" within=""></n)>
	Yellow	Average value from first and nth peak in the centre of measuring range (47.5 52.5 %)
	Green	OK, all used peaks are within the linearized (or masked) range.
Error 1	Intensity = 1	Warning if the intensity of one or more peaks falls within saturation or below the recognition threshold.
Error 2	Out of range = 1	Too less ( <n) area.<="" linearized="" peaks="" td="" the="" within=""></n)>

# A 4.2 LED Meaning for Multilayer Measurements

N - Number of (expected) peaks

# A 4.3 Digital Interfaces / Data Selection

Login	Preferences ?	* Digital interfaces ≥ Data s	election		Save Setup
Measurement program	Data	selection			
Sensor	Data				
Exposure mode / measuring rate				yer measurement	
Detection threshold		Change measure	ement program		
Averaging / error handling / statistics		Daten	Ethernet	RS422	
Zeroing / mastering		Distance 1	ঘ	ঘ	
Material database		Distance 2	1		
		Distance 3	ঘ		
Digital interfaces		Difference 1 / 2	E		
Digital interface selection		Difference 1 / 3	Г	Г	
Data selection		Difference 2/3	ঘ	Г	
Ethernet settings		Statistics min	Г	Г	
Settings RS422					
Ethernet / EtherCAT		Statistics max			
Switching outputs		Statistics peak-to-Peak			
Analog output		Exposure time	<b>N</b>		
Output-data rate		Intensities of all distance values	Г		
Trigger mode		Encoder 1	<b></b>	Г	
Synchronization		Encoder 2			
		Encoder 3			
Load / save settings		Error status		Г	
Extras		Measured value counter	C		
		Time stamp		Г	

Here the data which should be transferred via the digital interfaces can be selected.

# A 4.3.1 Switching Outputs / Limit Values

_ogin	ferences > Switching outputs	Save Setup
Measurement program S	witching outputs	
Exposure mode / measuring rate	Assignment of the switch output	s (digital I/O)
Detection threshold	Switch output "Error 1":	Error intensity (F1)
weraging / error handling / statistics	Switch output "Error 2":	Outside of the measuring range
eroing / mastering	Limit value settings	
laterial database	Lower limit value (in mm):	0.000000
igital interfaces	Upper limit value (in mm):	10.00000
witching outputs	Measurement value that belongs to limit	Distance 1
nalog output	values:	
Putput-data rate	Switch threshold of the error out	puts
Encoder inputs	Output level:	high active
Trigger mode		
Synchronization		
		Submit
oad / save settings		
ixtras	Different meanings can be assigned to both en	ror outputs. Default settings are intensity errors (peak to high or low) and
		esponds the two LED displays on the left side on the controller. hitoring. Therefore a lower as well as an upper limit value has to be entered.
<u>م</u>		
	The switching rate can be set to high or low in t	he case that the upper limit value has been exceeded or the lower limit has

Use the multilayer measuring mode to freely select the measurement value to which the limit outputs relate.

In addition, the selected measurement value is output via Ethernet interface.

### A 4.3.2 Analog Output

Home Preferences	Measurement Video signal Help/Info ConfocalDT 2471	О.
Login	Preferences > Analog output	
Measurement program Sensor	Analog output	
Exposure mode / measuring rate	Output signal: Difference 1 / 2	
Detection threshold Averaging / error handling / statistics	Only one measured value can be transferr Distance 2 Distance 3	
Zeroing / mastering	Output range: Difference 1 / 2 Difference 1 / 3	
Material database	Scaling: Standard scaling	
Switching outputs Analog output	Two-point-scaling (-> displacement and factor)	$\checkmark$
Output-data rate	Start of range (in mm):         -1.0000           End of range (in mm):         12.0000	
Encoder inputs		
Trigger mode Synchronization	Submit	
Load / save settings Extras	RIFILDE Output range: The first value corresponds to the start of measuring range, the second to the end of the measuring range	
	(ME). Standard scaling: Depends on the measurement program selected in the case of a displacement measurement: 0 MB for thickness measurement: 0 2MB;	
	If the range is to be displaced, then <b>zeroing mastering</b> .	
	State: 0K	

Use the multilayer measuring mode to freely select the measurement value to be output via the analog output.

In addition, the selected measurement value is output via Ethernet interface.

 $\overline{}$ 

# A 5 Adjustable Mounting Adapter JMA-xx

# A 5.1 Functions

- Supports optimal sensor alignment for best possible measurement results
- Manual adjustment mechanism for easy and fast adjustment
  - Shift in X/Y: ±2 mm
  - Tilt angle: ±4°
- High resistance to shocks and vibrations due to radial clamping allows integration into machines
- Compatible with numerous confocalDT and interferoMETER sensor models

# A 5.2 Sensor Mounting, Compatibility

Radial clamping for sensors with

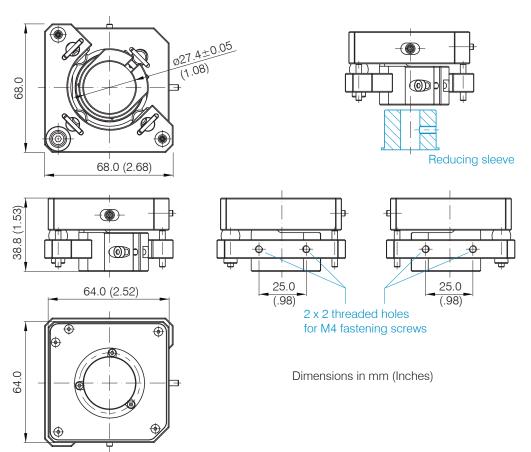
ø 8 mm	ø 12 mm	ø 20 mm	ø 27 mm
Reducing sleeve			
D27-D8 adapter	D27-D12 adapter	D27-D20 adapter	
confocalDT: IFS2403 series	confocalDT: IFS2404-2 IFS2407-0,1 IFS2407-0,8	confocalDT: IFS2406-2,5/VAC	confocalDT: IFS2405-0,3 IFS2405-1 IFS2406-3 IFS2406-10

# A 5.3 Assembly

- Mount the sensor in the mounting ring, see figure.
- Use reducing sleeves for sensors with an outer diameter of less than 27 mm.
- Mount the mounting adapter with screws type M4, see dimensional drawing.



# A 5.4 Dimensional Drawing of Mounting Adapter



# A 5.5 Perpendicular Alignment of Sensor

With the light source switched on, align the sensor with the measuring object.

Horizontal shift ±2 mm



Shift to the left:

Turn the hexagon socket screw clockwise

Shift to the right:

Turn the hexagon socket screw counterclockwise

Horizontal tilt angle ±4°

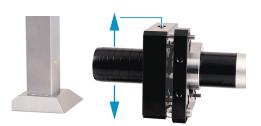


Tilt to the left:

Turn the hexagon socket screw clockwise

Tilt to the right:

Turn the hexagon socket screw counterclockwise



### Shift downwards:

Vertical shift ±2 mm

- Turn the hexagon socket screw clockwise
- Shift upwards:
- Turn the hexagon socket screw counterclockwise

### Vertical tilt angle ±4°



Tilt downwards:

- Turn the hexagon socket screw clockwise
- Tilt upwards:
- Turn the hexagon socket screw counterclockwise

# A 6 Cleaning Optical Components

# A 6.1 Contamination

Contaminated boundary surfaces and components can cause an increase in dark value and will affect sensitivity and accuracy. To avoid this, it is necessary to clean the optical components and record the dark value. The dark value refers to the interfering reflections at boundary surfaces along the optical signal path. At each boundary surface or material transition, the light waves are reflected to a certain extent at the transition and travel back in the fiber optics. The interfering signal overlaps with the useful signal and forms a kind of signal noise.

If the interference signal is sufficiently high and the useful signal is relatively weak, the useful signal can no longer be clearly identified. This may cause the controller to confuse a dark value peak with the measurement signal. The calculated distance of the measuring object therefore does not match the actual one.

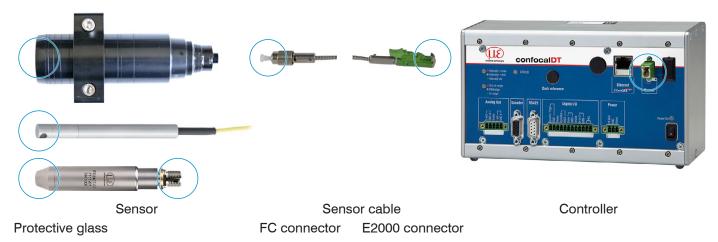


Fig. 80 Optical boundary surfaces of a confocal measuring system

Perform dark referencing, see 5.5.

Home Preferences M	Ressurement Video signal Helpfinfo ConfocalDT 2461	Home Preferences Measurement Video signal Helpfinfo ConfocalDT 2461
Video signal Dark reference	Video signal	Video signal Dark reference Video signal
Anterioritation Material Anterioritation Anterioritation Material Anterioritation Anterioritation Anterioritation Anterioritation Anterioritation Anterioritation Anterioritation Anterioritatio Anterioritation Anterioritationa Anterioritatio Anterioritation Anterioritationa Anterioritatio Anterioritatio Anterioritatio An	Exposure time:         400.00 µs         Measuring rate:         2.5.ML           Manual v	Masked range     Exposure time:     400.00 µs     Measuring rate:     2.5 MHz       Exposure model:     Manual        Measuring rate:     2.5 MHz       000     000       Bobmit     75
Data selection Diagram	25	Data selection Diagram Tata selection Diagram Tata sequal Tata sequal Tata selection concess signal Tata selection concess selection conc
ILight values table     IDetection threshold     IDetection thresh	0 0 0 25 50 75 100 Range [%]	✓ ■ Orthogram Earlier           ✓ ■ Orthogram Breaking           ✓ ■ OrthogramBreaking           ✓ ■ OrthogramBreak

Video signal before dark reference (high dark value, blue Video signal after dark reference line)

If the video signal corresponds to the condition before the dark reference, you must clean the optical boundary surface within the measuring system. Clean the optical surfaces one by one to find the dirty component. You can observe how cleaning improves the result by watching the dark signal of the video signal.

- Continue with the section Protective Glass of Sensor.
- Check and clean the protective glass of the sensor at regular intervals depending on the operating conditions.
- 1 Clean the system starting from the controller to the sensor. Always clean both components of a matched pair, i.e. plug and socket.

# A 6.2 Tools and Cleaning Agents

One-Click <sup>™</sup> cleaner	Isopropyl alcohol	Q-Tip, suitable for clean rooms	Pressurized gas, dry and oil-free
			DRUCKLUFT
For FC or E2000 type plug or socket	For the protective glass of the sensor	Use with isopropyl alcohol for protective glass of the sensor	Removes loose par- ticles

# A 6.3 Protective Glass of Sensor

Loose particles

Blow off loose particles with dry, oil-free pressurized air.

Stuck particles

Clean the protective glass with a clean, soft, lint-free cloth or lens cleaning paper and pure alcohol (isopropyl alcohol).

For sensors with a small protective glass, e.g., the IFS2403 series:

Soak a Q-Tip in isopropyl alcohol. Slowly rub the Q-Tip with a circular motion on the protective glass.



Fig. 81 Protective glass, sensors for radial measurement

Perform dark referencing.

If the video signal corresponds to the condition before the dark reference, you must clean the boundary surface within the measuring system.

**Continue with the section** Interface between Controller and Sensor Cable.

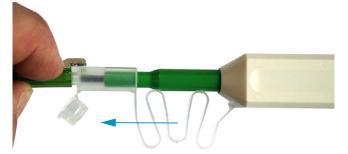
# A 6.4 Interface between Controller and Sensor Cable

- Disconnect the sensor cable (fiber optic cable) from the controller.
- Remove the protective cap of the One-Click<sup>™</sup> cleaner.
- Put the One-Click<sup>™</sup> cleaner into the fiber optic connector of the controller, see figure.
- Press the outer sleeve of the One-Click<sup>™</sup> cleaner onto the fiber optic connector until a click noise signalizes the end of cleaning.



Fig. 82 One-Click™ for cleaning E2000 optical fiber transitions

- Insert the protective cap on the controller into the fiber optic connector.
- Remove the protective front cap of the One-Click<sup>™</sup> cleaner.
- Put the One-Click<sup>™</sup> cleaner into the fiber optic cable, see figure.
- Press the outer sleeve of the One-Click<sup>™</sup> cleaner onto the fiber optic cable until a click noise signalizes the end of cleaning.



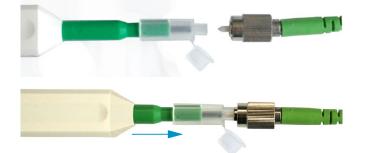
- Plug the sensor cable into the controller.
- Perform dark referencing.

If the video signal corresponds to the condition before the dark reference, you must clean the boundary surface within the measuring system.

**Continue with the section** Interface between Sensor Cable and Sensor.

# A 6.5 Interface between Sensor Cable and Sensor

- Remove the sensor cable (fiber optic cable) from the sensor.
- Remove the protective front cap of the One-Click<sup>™</sup> cleaner.
- Put the One-Click<sup>™</sup> cleaner into the fiber optic cable, see figure.
- Press the outer sleeve of the One-Click<sup>™</sup> cleaner onto the fiber optic cable until a click noise signalizes the end of cleaning.



Put a protective cap on the fiber optic cable.

Sensors with fiber optics, e.g. IFS2407 series:

- Remove the protective cap of the One-Click<sup>™</sup> cleaner.
- Put the One-Click<sup>™</sup> cleaner into the sensor, see figure.
- Press the outer sleeve of the One-Click<sup>™</sup> cleaner onto the sensor until a click noise signalizes the end of cleaning.



- Connect the sensor cable to the sensor.
- Perform dark referencing.

If the video signal corresponds to the condition before the dark reference, you must clean the boundary surface within the measuring system.

**Continue with the section** Interface between Controller and Sensor Cable.

# A 6.6 **Preventive Protection**

Sensors and controllers of a confocal chromatic sensor system are supplied with protective caps. This prevents dust or similar contaminants from being deposited at the optical boundary surfaces.

Cover all optical fiber connections immediately when replacing sensors or disconnecting a sensor cable from the controller.





# A 7 ASCII Communication with Controller

# A 7.1 General

The ASCII commands can be sent to the controller via the RS422 interface or Ethernet (Port 23). All commands, inputs and error messages are in English. A command always consists of the command name and zero or more parameters, which are separated by spaces and are completed with LF. If spaces are used in parameters, the parameters must be placed in quotation marks (e.g. "password with spaces").

Example: Switch on the output via RS422

OUTPUT RS422 🖵

Advice: I must include LF, but may also be CR LF.

Declaration: LF Line feed (line feed, hex 0A)

- CR Carriage return (carriage return, hex 0D)
- Lenter (depending on the system hex 0A or hex 0D0A)

The currently set parameter value is returned, if a command is activated without parameters.

The output format is:

<Command name> <Parameter1> [<Parameter2> [...]]

The reply can be used again as command for the parameter setting without changes. In this case, optional parameters are returned only where necessary. For example, Select data for additional values, see A 7.5.2.4, will return enabled output values only.

After processing a command, the system always returns a line break and a command prompt. In the event of an error, an error message starting with "Exx" will appear before the prompt, where xx represents a unique error number. In addition, the system may display a warning ("Wxx") instead of an error message. Warnings are structured like error messages, such as "If Xenon lamp is too hot..." Warnings do not prevent commands from being executed.

Group	Chapter	Command	Short info
General			
	Chap. A 7.3.1.1	HELP	Help
	Chap. A 7.3.1.2	GETINFO	Controller information
	Chap. A 7.3.1.3	ECHO	Reply type
	Chap. A 7.3.1.4	PRINT, PRINT ALL	Overview parameters
	Chap. A 7.3.1.5	SYNC	Synchronization
	Chap. A 7.3.1.6	RESET	Booting the controller
	Chap. A 7.3.1.7	GETTEMP	Controller temperature
User leve	el		
	Chap. A 7.3.2.1	LOGIN	Change of the user level
	Chap. A 7.3.2.2	LOGOUT	Change to user level
	Chap. A 7.3.2.3	GETUSERLEVEL	Request user level
	Chap. A 7.3.2.4	STDUSER	Set standard user
	Chap. A 7.3.2.5	PASSWD	Change password
Sensor			
	Chap. A 7.3.3.1	SENSORTABLE	Display available sensors
	Chap. A 7.3.3.2	SENSORHEAD	Select a sensor
	Chap. A 7.3.3.3	SENSORINFO	Sensor information
	Chap. A 7.3.3.4	DARKCORR	Start dark reference
	Chap. A 7.3.3.5	DARKCORRTHRES	Warning threshold in the event of contamination
	Chap. A 7.3.3.6	LIGHTCORR	Start light source reference

# A 7.2 Commands Overview

Triggerin	g		
	Chap. A 7.3.4.1	TRIGGER	Select trigger
	Chap. A 7.3.4.2	TRIGGERAT	Effect of the trigger input
	Chap. A 7.3.4.3	TRIGGERLEVEL	Select level active trigger input
	Chap. A 7.3.4.4	TRIGGERCOUNT	Number of measurements dis- played
	Chap. A 7.3.4.5	TRIGGERSW	Software trigger pulse
	Chap. A 7.3.4.6	TRIGGERENC	Set encoder triggering
Encoder			
	Chap. A 7.3.5.1	ENCINTERPOLn	Set interpolation depth
	Chap. A 7.3.5.2	ENCREFn	Set reference track
	Chap. A 7.3.5.3	ENCVALUEn	Prepare encoder value
	Chap. A 7.3.5.4	ENCSET	Set encoder value
	Chap. A 7.3.5.5	ENCRESET	Reset encoder value
	Chap. A 7.3.5.6	ENCMAXn	Set max encoder value
Interface			
	Chap. A 7.3.6.1	IPCONFIG	Ethernet settings
	Chap. A 7.3.6.2	MEASTRANSFER	Set measurement server
	Chap. A 7.3.6.3	BAUDRATE	RS422 settings
	Chap. A 7.3.6.4	ETHERMODE	Change Ethernet - EtherCAT
Paramete	ers, load/save setti	ngs	
	Chap. A 7.3.7.1	STORE	Save parameters
	Chap. A 7.3.7.2	READ	Load parameters
	Chap. A 7.3.7.3	SETDEFAULT	Set default setting
Measure			
	Chap. A 7.4.1.1	MEASMODE	Measurement mode
	Chap. A 7.4.1.2	MEASPEAK	Peak selection
	Chap. A 7.4.1.3	SHUTTERMODE	Exposure mode
	Chap. A 7.4.1.4	MEASRATE	Measuring rate
	Chap. A 7.4.1.5	SHUTTER	Exposure time
	Chap. A 7.4.1.6	TAKESHUTTER	Takeover exposure time from search mode into manual mode
	Chap. A 7.4.1.7	GETVIDEO	Request video signal
Video sig	gnal		
	Chap. A 7.4.2.1	ROI	Reduce region of interest
	Chap. A 7.4.2.2	VSAVERAGE	Video averaging
	Chap. A 7.4.2.3	THRESHOLD	Set peak threshold
Material	data base	,	
	Chap. A 7.4.3.1	MATERIALTABLE	Read material table
	Chap. A 7.4.3.2	MATERIAL	Select material
	Chap. A 7.4.3.3	MATERIALINFO	Display material
	Chap. A 7.4.3.4	MATERIALEDIT	Edit material table
	Chap. A 7.4.3.5	MATERIALDELETE	Delete material table
Number o			settings / multilayer measurement
	Chap. A 7.4.4.1	REFRACCORR	Number of peaks and enabling disabling refractive correction
	Chap. A 7.4.4.2	MATERIALMP MATERIALINFO	Material settings and properties

Measur	ement value proces	sing	
	Chap. A 7.4.5.1	AVERAGE	Averaging of measurement value
	Chap. A 7.4.5.2	SPIKECORR	Spike correction
	Chap. A 7.4.5.3	STATISTICSIGNAL	Selecting the signal for statistics
	Chap. A 7.4.5.4	STATISTICDEPTH	Values used for statistics
	Chap. A 7.4.5.5	RESETSTATISTIC	Reset the statistics
	Chap. A 7.4.5.6	MASTERSIGNAL	Selecting the signal for maste- ring/ zero setting
	Chap. A 7.4.5.7	MASTERMV	Setting masters / zero
Data ou	itput		
	Chap. A 7.5.1.1	OUTPUT	Selection digital output
	Chap. A 7.5.1.2	OUTREDUCE	Output data rate
	Chap. A 7.5.1.3	OUTHOLD	Error processing
Select I	measurement values	to be output via the inter	faces
	Chap. A 7.5.2.1	OUTDIST_RS422 OUT- DIST_ETH	Data selection displacement measurement
	Chap. A 7.5.2.2	OUTTHICK_RS422 OUTTHICK_ETH	Data selection thickness measu- rement
	Chap. A 7.5.2.3	OUTSTATISTIC_RS422 OUTSTATISTIC_ETH	Data selection statistic values
	Chap. A 7.5.2.4	OUTADD_RS422 OUTADD_ETH	Data selection optional values
	Chap. A 7.5.2.5	SWITCHMD2	Switching on output of non linea- rized distances
	Chap. A 7.5.2.5	OUTVIDEO	Set video output
Switchi	ng outputs		· · ·
	Chap. A 7.5.3.1	ERROROUTn	Selection error signal for output
	Chap. A 7.5.3.2	ERRORLIMIT	Set the limit values
	Chap. A 7.5.3.3	ERRORLEVEL	Active level of switching outputs
Analog			· · · ·
	Chap. A 7.5.4.1	ANALOGOUT	Data selection for the analog output
	Chap. A 7.5.4.2	ANALOGRANGE	Set current-/voltage range of digital-analog converter (DAC)
	Chap. A 7.5.4.3	ANALOGSCALE	Setting the scaling of DAC

# A 7.3 General Commands

A 7.3.1 General

### A 7.3.1.1 Help

HELP [<command>]

Help is displayed for a command. If no command is specified, general help information is displayed.

### A 7.3.1.2 Controller Information

Sensor data are queried. Output as per example below:

->GETINFO	
Name:	IFC2451
Serial:	11020009
Option:	001
Article:	2418004
MAC-Address:	00-0C-12-01-06-08
Version:	004.093.087.02
Imagetype:	User

Name: Name of the controller model / controller series

Serial: Controller serial number

Option: Controller option number

Article: Controller article number

MAC Address: Network adapter address

Version: Version of the booted software

Image type: Type of the booted software (Factory- or User Images)

The Factory Image is installed by the manufacturer of the controller and cannot be overwritten. An update of User Images can be done by the end user. If an error occurs when updating the User Images, then the Factory Images is loaded when the system starts the next time.

Error	Description
E34	The Controller has not been trained or lost of flash memory.
E34	-> Send the controller back to the manufacturer.

### A 7.3.1.3 Reply Type

ECHO ON|OFF

The reply type describes the structure of a command reply.

ECHO ON: The command name and the command reply or an error message is output.

ECHO OFF: Only the command reply or an error message is returned.

### A 7.3.1.4 Parameter Overview

### PRINT

This command outputs a list of all setting parameters and its values.

PRINT ALL

This command outputs a list of all setting parameters and its values, as well as information such as sensor table or GETINFO.

### A 7.3.1.5 Synchronization

SYNC NONE | MASTER | SLAVE | SLAVE \_ EXT

Setting the type of synchronization:

- NONE: No synchronization
- MASTER: The controller is master, ie. it transmits synchronization pulses.
- SLAVE: The controller is slave and receives synchronous pulses from another IFC24x1.
- SLAVE\_EXT: The controller is slave and receives synchronous pulses from another source.

Error	Description
E02	Incorrect parameter type (not a valid type of synchronization).
E11	Parameter 1 is too long.

Sync may be an input or output, so you need to ensure that one of the controllers is defined as a master and the other one as a slave.

The sync input is also used as trigger input for flank and level triggering, , see A 7.3.4.1, "Trigger".

#### A 7.3.1.6 Booting the Sensor

RESET

The controller restarts.

#### A 7.3.1.7 Querying the Controller Temperature

GETTEMP

Request the internal temperature sensor in controller

Response example: GETEMP 34.51

Temperature in °C with two decimals

### A 7.3.2 User Level

### A 7.3.2.1 Changing the User Level

LOGIN <Password>

Enter the password to switch to a different user level. The following user levels exist:

- USER: Read-only access to all elements + use of the web diagrams
- PROFESSIONAL: Read/write access to all elements

Error	Description
E06	Access denied -> Incorrect password
E11	Password is too long (more than 31 characters)

### A 7.3.2.2 Changing to User Level

LOGOUT

Sets the user level to USER.

### A 7.3.2.3 Querying the User Level

GETUSERLEVEL

Request the current user level.

For possible responses, see A 7.3.2.1, "Changing the user level".

### A 7.3.2.4 Defining a Standard User

STDUSER USER | PROFESSIONAL

Sets the standard user, who is logged in after system start.

### A 7.3.2.5 Changing the Password

PASSWD <Old Password> <New Password> <New Password>

Changes the password for the **PROFESSIONAL** level. The default (preset) password is 000.

The old password must be entered once, and the new password twice. If the new passwords do not match, an error message is displayed. Passwords are case sensitive. A password may only contain letters (A to Z) and numbers, but no special characters and no letters with accents or umlauts. The maximum length is 31 characters.

### A 7.3.3 Sensor

### A 7.3.3.1 Info about Calibration Tables

SENSORTABLE

->SENSORTABLE				
Pos,	Sensor name,	Range,	Serial	
Ο,	ifs-2405x,	3,000mm,	12345678	
8,	ifs-2405x,	10,000mm,	12345678	
9,	ifs-2405x,	3,000mm,	12345678	
->				

All available (learned) sensors are displayed.

### A 7.3.3.2 Sensor Number

SENSORHEAD <sensor position>

Selects the current sensor from its position, see A 7.3.3.1.

Minimum 0, maximum 19.

Error	Description
E39	Sensor is not available

### A 7.3.3.3 Sensor Information

### SENSORINFO

Displays sensor data (name, measuring range and serial number).

```
->SENSORINFO

Position: 0

Name: ifs-2405x

Measuring range: 3.000 mm

Serial: 12345678

->
```

### A 7.3.3.4 Dark Correction

DARKCORR

Performs a dark correction. Dark correction is sensor-dependent and is stored separately in the controller for each sensor. Before carrying out a dark correction, select the required sensor.

### A 7.3.3.5 Warning Threshold in the Event of Contamination

DARKCORRTHRES <threshold>

Threshold: Deviation (in %) of the intensity/exposure time from the stored value, above which a warning message will appear. Default setting: 50 %.

The warning threshold is set in % with one decimal.

# A 7.3.3.6 Light Correction

LIGHTCORR

Performs a light correction. The correction is light source-dependent not sensor-dependent. The light correction is already performed by the manufacturer.

For the IFC with xenon light source can this correction be performed by the user after a light source change in the user level PROFESSIONAL. The IFC2451, IFC2461 and the IFC2471LED require no light correction by the customer.

Error	Description
E04	Error with the setting of internal parameters (should never occur)
E16	Timeout when light correction
E18	A data transmitting is already running -> Light correction not possible

### A 7.3.4 Trigger Modes

Trigger-input serves also as synchronous input, which means level and edge triggering is only alternatively possible to sync mode.

### A 7.3.4.1 Trigger Type

TRIGGER NONE | EDGE | PULSE | SOFTWARE | ENCODER

- NONE: No triggering
- PULSE: Level triggering
- EDGE: Edge triggering
- SOFTWARE: Software triggering
- ENCODER: Encoder triggering

### A 7.3.4.2 Effect of the Trigger Input

TRIGGERAT [INPUT|OUTPUT]

- INPUT: Triggering the measured value recording. When calculating the mean, measured values immediately before the trigger event are not included; instead older measured values are used, which were the output in previous trigger events.
- OUTPUT: Triggering the measurement value output. When calculating the mean, measured values immediately before the trigger event are used.

Triggering of measured value recording is enabled as a factory default setting.

### A 7.3.4.3 Trigger Level

TRIGGERLEVEL HIGH|LOW

- HIGH: Edge triggering: Rising edge, level triggering: High-active
- LOW: Edge triggering: Falling edge, level triggering: Low-active

### A 7.3.4.4 Number of Output Measurement Values

TRIGGERCOUNT <1...16382>|16383

Number of measurement values which are displayed when edge triggering or software triggering.

- 1...16382: Number of measurement values which are displayed after a trigger impulse when edge triggering or software triggering.
- 16383: Start infinite output of measurement values after a trigger impulse when edge triggering or software triggering.
- 0: Stop triggering

#### A 7.3.4.5 Software Trigger Pulse

TRIGGERSW

Creates a software trigger pulse

Error	Description
E43	The controller is not in the software trigger mode, see A 7.3.4.1.

#### A 7.3.4.6 Settings Encoder Triggering

TRIGGERENC 1|2|3[<Step> [<Min> [<Max>]]]

Settings for the encoder triggering

- 1|2|3: Selection of encoder track for the encoder triggering
- Step: Number of encoder steps, after which each one a measured value is output (min: 0 max: 2<sup>31</sup>-1). Measured values are output continuously between min. and max at 0.
- Min: Minimal encoder value, up to that is triggered (min: 0 max: 2<sup>32</sup>-1)
- Max: Maximum encoder value, up to that is triggered (min: 0 max: 2<sup>32</sup>-1)

#### A 7.3.5 Encoder

#### A 7.3.5.1 Encoder Interpolation Depth

```
ENCINTERPOL1 1|2|4
ENCINTERPOL2 1|2|4
ENCINTERPOL3 1|2|4
```

Set the interpolation depth of each encoder input.

#### A 7.3.5.2 Effect of the Reference Track

ENCREF1	NONE   ONE   EVER
ENCREF2	NONE   ONE   EVER
ENCREF3	NONE   ONE   EVER

Setting the effect of encoder reference track.

- NONE: Reference mark of the encoder has no effect.
- ONE: Unique setting (the encoder value is taken over at first reaching of reference marker position, see A 7.3.5.3).
- EVER: Setting at all marker positions (the encoder value is taken over at first reaching of reference marker position), see A 7.3.5.3.

#### A 7.3.5.3 Encoder Value

```
ENCVALUE1 <Encoder value>
ENCVALUE2 <Encoder value>
ENCVALUE3 <Encoder value>
```

Indicates, on which value the applicable encoder is to be set when reaching a reference marker position (or per software).

The encoder value can be set between 0 and 2<sup>32</sup>-1.

When setting the ENCVALUE, the algorithm for detecting the first reference marker position, see A 7.3.5.2, is reset automatically.

#### A 7.3.5.4 Setting Encoder Value per Software

ENCSET 1|2|3

Setting the encoder value, see A 7.3.5.3, in the specified encoder per software (only possible with ENCREF NONE, otherwise the command returns immediately without an error message).

#### A 7.3.5.5 Reset the Detection of the First Marker Position

ENCRESET 1|2|3

Reset the detection of the first reference marker position, see A 7.3.5.2 (only possible with ENCREF ONE, otherwise the command returns immediately without an error message).

A 7.3.5.6 Maximum Encoder Value

ENCMAX1 <Encoder value> ENCMAX2 <Encoder value> ENCMAX3 <Encoder value>

Specifies the maximum value of the encoder, after which the encoder returns to 0. Can be used e.g. for rotary encoder without reference track.

The encoder value can be set between 0 and 2<sup>32</sup>-1.

#### A 7.3.6 Interfaces

#### A 7.3.6.1 Ethernet IP Settings

IPCONFIG DHCP|STATIC [<IPAddress> [<Netmask> [<Gateway>]]]

Set Ethernet interface.

DHCP: IP address and gateway are automatically requested by DHCP. System looks for a LinkLocal address after appr. 2 minutes if no DHCP server is available.

STATIC: Set IP address, net mask and gateway in format xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.

Values stay the same if no IP address, net mask, and gateway is typed in.

#### A 7.3.6.2 Setting for Ethernet Measured Value Transfering

MEASTRANSFER NONE|SERVER/TCP [<PORT>]|(CLIENT/TCP|CLIENT/UDP
[<IPAddress> [<Port>]])

The IFC24xx can be operated as a server as well as a client for measurement output via Ethernet.

- NONE: No measurement transmission via Ethernet.
- SERVER/TCP: Controller provides a server for the typed in port, under which the measured values can be sent. This is only possible via TCP/IP.
- CLIENT/TCP: Controller sends measured values via TCP/IP connection oriented to server. The specifying of the IP address and server port are required, see A 7.5.1.1.
- CLIENT/UDP: Controller sends measured values via UDP/IP connectionless to server. Therefore the IP address and the server port are specified.
- IPAddress: IP address of the server, to which measured values are sent when in clientmode, (only valid for CLIENT/TCP or CLIENT/UDP).
- Port: Port, to which the server gets assigned to in server-mode or to which the measured values are sent in client-mode (min: 1024, max: 65535).
- Commands are expected at port 23, the data port is factory-set to 1024.

#### A 7.3.6.3 Setting RS422 Baud Rate

BAUDRATE <Baudrate>

Adjustable baud rates in examples:

9600, 115200, 230400, 460800, 691200, 921600, 1500000, 2000000, 2500000, 3000000, 3500000, 4000000

#### A 7.3.6.4 Change Ethernet / EtherCAT

ETHERMODE ETHERNET | ETHERCAT

Select whether the controller starts with Ethernet or EtherCAT mode. The setting is active after save and reboot the controller only.

### A 7.3.7 Parameter Management, Load / Save Settings

#### A 7.3.7.1 Save Parameter

STORE 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8

Save the current parameter under the specified number in the flash.

#### A 7.3.7.2 Load Parameter

READ ALL|DEVICE|MEAS 1|2|3|4|5|6|7|8

Load the parameter under the specified number from the flash.

In addition, the size of the loaded data needs to be specified.

- ALL: All parameters are loaded.
- DEVICE: Only the standard device settings are loaded (interface parameter).
- MEAS: Only the measurement settings are loaded (all features for the measurement).

#### A 7.3.7.3 Default Settings

SETDEFAULT ALL | NODEVICE | MATERIAL

Sets the default values (Reset to default setting).

- ALL: All setups are deleted and default parameters are loaded. In addition, the current material table is overwritten by standard material table.
- NODEVICE: All setups are deleted and default parameters are loaded. Settings of IP address and RS422 are kept temporarily.
- MATERIAL: Only current material table is overwritten by standard material table.

#### A 7.4 Measurements

#### A 7.4.1 General

#### A 7.4.1.1 Measurement Mode

MEASMODE DISTANCE | THICKNESS | MULTILAYER | VIDEO | VIDEOSTREAM

- DISTANCE: Distance measurement. Only distance 1 can be displayed.
- THICKNESS: Thickness measurement. Distances 1 and 2 and the difference between the two distances may be displayed.
- MULTILAYER: Multilayer measurement. Up to six distances and differences can be output between them.
- VIDEO: Video images are transmitted. The video images must be requested individually using the video signal command.
- VIDEOSTREAM: Video transmission. The video data are transferred permanently after the transfer has been started with the OUTPUT command. A single image transfer is not necessary. Depending on the number of output signals, an uninterruptible video output is possible up to 1 kHz.

#### A 7.4.1.2 Peak Selection

MEASPEAK F L|L SL|F S|H SH

Selection of the used peak for measurement.

Distance measurement		Thickne	Thickness measurement		
F_L:	first peak	F_L:	first and last peak		
L_SL:	last peak	L_SL:	second to last and last peak		
F_S:	first peak	F_S:	first and second peak		
H_SH:	highest peak	H_SH:	highest and second highest peak		

#### A 7.4.1.3 Exposure Mode

SHUTTERMODE SEARCH | MEAS | MANUAL | 2TIMEALT | 2TIMES

- SEARCH: Search mode to determine the best exposure time and measurement rate.
- MEAS: Exposure time is controlled automatically, measuring rate is fixed. Recommended for measurements.
- MANUAL: User can select exposure time and measuring rate.
- 2TIMEALT: Mode with 2 manually defined exposure times that are used alternately for two distinctly differently high peaks (for thickness measurements). We recommend using this mode in particular, if the smaller peak disappears or the higher peak overshoots.
- 2TIMES: Fastest mode with two manually preset exposure times. The more suitable time is automatically selected. Recommended to measure distances for fast changing surface properties, such as mirrored or anti-glare glass.

#### A 7.4.1.4 Measuring Rate

MEASRATE <Measuring rate>

Selects the measuring rate in kHz.

- IFC2471: 0.3 kHz ... 70 kHz
- IFC2471LED: 0.1 kHz ... 70 kHz
- IFC2461: 0.1 kHz ... 25 kHz
- IFC2451: 0.1 kHz ... 10 kHz

No more than one decimal place may be specified.

#### A 7.4.1.5 Exposure Time

```
SHUTTER <Exposure Time1> [<Exposure Time2>]
```

Specifies the exposure times for the manual and the two-times exposure mode.

- The exposure time is indicated in µs and must be with
- IFC2471: between 0.1 μs ... 3333.325 μs.
- IFC2461: between 0.1 μs ... 10000 μs.
- IFC2451: between 0.1 μs ... 10000 μs.

The exposure time is processed with three decimal places. The minimum increment is  $0.025 \,\mu s$ .

#### A 7.4.1.6 Apply Exposure Time

TAKESHUTTER

Apply in the search mode determined exposure times in the exposure time parameters.

#### A 7.4.1.7 Video Signal Request

GETVIDEO

Request of video signal via Ethernet interface.

#### A 7.4.2 Video Signal

#### A 7.4.2.1 Reduction of Region of Interest

ROI <Start> <End>

Set region of interest. ROI for start and end must be between 0 and 511. The specification is effected in the unit pixels. "Start" value is smaller than "End" value.

#### A 7.4.2.2 Video Averaging

VSAVERAGE NONE | REC2 | REC4 | REC8 | MOV2 | MOV4 | MOV3 | MED3

NONE: No video signal averaging

REC2, REC4, REC8: Recursive average value over 2, 4 or 8 video signals

MOV2, MOV3, MOV4: Moving average value over 2, 3 or 4 video signals

MED3: Median over 3 video signals

#### A 7.4.2.3 Peak Detection Threshold

THRESHOLD <Threshold>

Setting the detection threshold in % (0.0 % up to 99.0 %).

The detection threshold is given with two decimal places.

#### A 7.4.3 Material Data Base

#### A 7.4.3.1 Material Table

->MATE	RIALTABLE					
		R	efraction inde	x	Abbenumber	
Pos,	Name,	nF at 486nm,	nd at 587nm,	nC at 656nm,	vd	Description
0	Vacuum,	1.000000,	1.000000,	1.000000,	0.00000	Vacuum; air(approximately)
1	Water,	1.337121,	1.333044,	1.331152,	0.00000	
1	Ethanol,	1.361400,	1.361400,	1.361400,	0.00000	
7	PC,	1.599439,	1.585470,	1.579864,	0.00000	Polycarbonate
8	Quartz glass,	1.463126,	1.458464,	1.456367,	0.00000	Silicon dioxide, fused silica
9	BK7,	1.522380,	1.516800,	1.514320,	0.00000	Crown glass
->						

#### A 7.4.3.2 Select Material

MATERIAL <Material name>

Change of material between displacement 1 and 2.

Material name must be typed in with a blank. The command supports case sensitive inputs. The maximum length of material name is 30 characters.

#### A 7.4.3.3 Display Material Properties

MATERIALINFO

Output of properties of selected material.

->MATERIALINFO	
Name:	BK7
Description:	Crown glass
Refraction index nF at 486nm:	1.522380
Refraction index nd at 587nm:	1.516800
Refraction index nC at 656nm:	1.514320
Abbe value vd:	0.00000
->	

#### A 7.4.3.4 Edit Material Table

MATERIALEDIT <Name> <Description> (NX <nF> <nd> <nC>) | (ABBE <nd> <Abbe number>)

Add or edit material for multilayer measurement, see A 7.4.4.2.

- Name: Name of material (Length: max. 30 characters)
- Description: Description of material (Length: max. 62 characters)
- NX: Material is characterized by three refractive indices
- ABBE: Material is characterized by a refractive index and the Abbe number
- nF: Refractive index nF at 486 nm (min: 1.0, max: 4.0)
- nd: Refractive index nd at 587 nm (min: 1.0, max: 4.0)
- nC: Refractive index nC at 656 nm (min: 1.0, max: 4.0)
- Abbe number: Abbe number vd (min: 10.0, max: 200.0)

The refractive indices and Abbe number are processed with six decimal places.

If the material name is already assigned, this material is being edited. Otherwise a new material is applied.

There is a maximum of 20 materials.

The refractive index is set with 6 decimals.

#### A 7.4.3.5 Delete a Material

MATERIALDELETE <Name>

Delete a material

- Name: Name of material (Length: max. 30 characters)

#### A 7.4.4 Number of Peaks, Material Settings Multilayer Measurements

#### A 7.4.4.1 Number of Peaks and Enabling/Disabling Refractive Correction

REFRACCORR on | off [<Number of peaks>]

On: The refractive index correction is performed with the adjusted materials, default setting.

Off: The refractive index 1.0 is expected for all layers.

Number of peaks: Number of the used peaks expected for the multilayer measurement. The number must be between 3 ... 6 (the distance and thickness measurement modes are available for a few peaks).

#### A 7.4.4.2 Material Settings

```
MATERIALMP [<Material1>[<Material2>[<Material3>[<Material4>[<Material5>]]]]
```

Displaying and setting the materials for the layers between the peaks 1 up to 6.

The existing material is maintained with input from "".

MATERIALINFO [<Number of layer>]

Display the material for the opposite layer. The information is output to layer 1 without parameter.

#### A 7.4.5 Measurement Value Processing

#### A 7.4.5.1 Averaging of Measurement Value

AVERAGE NONE | MOVING | RECURSIVE | MEDIAN [< Averaging depth>]

- The averaging value always affects all to be output displacement and difference values.
- NONE: No averaging value
- MOVING: Moving averaging value (averaging depth 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512 and 1024 possible)
- RECURSIVE: Recursive averaging value (averaging depth 2 up to 32768 possible)
- MEDIAN: Median (averaging depth 3, 5, 7 and 9 possible)

#### A 7.4.5.2 Spike Correction

```
SPIKECORR [ON|OFF[[<Number of evaluated measured values>][[<Tol-
erance range in mm>][<Number of corrected values>]]]
```

Spike correction is not enabled in the factory default settings.

	Factory settings	Min	Max
Number of measured values evaluated	3	1	10
Tolerance range in mm	0.1000000	0.0000000	100.0000000
Number of corrected values	1	1	100

The tolerance range is set in mm with seven decimals.

#### A 7.4.5.3 Selection of the Signal for the Statistics, Multilayer Measurement

```
STATISTICSIGNAL DIST1|DIST2|DIST3|DIST4|DIST5|DIST6|THICK12|
THICK13|THICK14|THICK15|THICK16|THICK23|THICK24|THICK25|THICK26|
THICK34|THICK35|THICK36|THICK45|THICK46|THICK56
```

Information of the signal for which the statistics calculation should be applied.

#### A 7.4.5.4 Setting the Statistics Calculation

STATISTICDEPTH ALL|2|4|8|...|8192|16384

Input on how many measurement values the statistics data minimum, maximum and peak to peak are determined.

#### A 7.4.5.5 Reset the Statistics Calculation

RESETSTATISTIC

Reset the statistics (of the current min and max value).

A 7.4.5.6 Selection of the Signal for the Mastering / Zero Setting, Multilayer Measurement

```
MASTERSIGNAL DIST1|DIST2|DIST3|DIST4|DIST5|DIST6|THICK12|
THICK13|THICK14|THICK15|THICK16|THICK23|THICK24|THICK25|
THICK26|THICK34|THICK35|THICK36|THICK45|THICK46|THICK56
```

Information of the signal for which the mastering or the zero setting should be applied.

The distance or the difference 1-2 is used in the distance or thickness measurement mode. The free selection of the signal is only possible in the measurement program multilayer measurement.

#### A 7.4.5.7 Setting Masters / Zero

MASTERMV NONE | MASTER < Master value>

- NONE: Reset the mastering
- MASTER: Setting the current measurement value to the master value
- Master value: Master value in millimeters (min: -measuring range, max: +measuring range)

In case of master value is 0, then the mastering function has the same functionality as the zero setting. The master command awaits the next measurement value a maximum of 2 seconds and uses it as master value. If no measurement value is received within this time, for example, by external triggering, the command returns with the error "E32 Time-out". The master value is processed with six decimal places.

### A 7.5 Data Output

#### A 7.5.1 General

#### A 7.5.1.1 Selection Digital Output

OUTPUT NONE | RS422 | ETHERNET | ETHERCAT

- NONE: No measurement value output
- RS422: Output of measurement values via RS422
- ETHERNET: Output of measurement values via Ethernet
- ETHERCAT: Output of measurement values via EtherCAT

### A 7.5.1.2 Output Data Rate

OUTREDUCE <Output reduction> [ANALOG|RS422|ETHERNET|NONE]

Reduces the measurement value output for all available interfaces.

- 1: Output each measurement value
- 2...1000: Output of each n-th measurement value

#### A 7.5.1.3 Error Processing

OUTHOLD NONE | 0 | <Number>

Setting the behavior of the measurement value output in case of error.

- NONE: No holding the last measurement value, output of error value
- 0: Infinite holding of the last measurement value
- Number: Holding the last measurement value on the number of measuring cycles; then an error value (maximum of 1024) is output.

#### A 7.5.2 Select Measurement Values to be Output

Setting the values to be output via the RS422 and Ethernet interface.

Maximum 32 measurement values are transmitted with RS422 in parallel.

The maximum output rate via the Ethernet interface depends on the number of output values.

Any distances and differences can be selected for the output in the multilayer measurement mode. All measurement values required for the difference calculations are output in addition to the Ethernet measuring value transmission.

Via the Ethernet interface always the displacement 1 and in case of thickness measurement the displacement 1 and 2 and the difference 1-2 is output .

A 7.5.2.1 Data Selection Displacement Measurement for RS422 / Ethernet

Controller IFC24x1	Controller IFC24x1MP		
OUTDIST_RS422 NONE [DIST1]	OUTDIST_RS422 NONE [DIST1]		
[DIST2]	[DIST2] [DIST3] [DIST4]		
OUTDIST_ETH NONE [DIST1]	[DIST5] [DIST6]		
[DIST2]	OUTDIST ETH NONE [DIST1]		
	[DIST2] [DIST3] [DIST4] [DIST5] [DIST6]		

Setting, which displacement values are output through RS422 or Ethernet. All active distance and thickness values are transmitted via Ethernet.

- NONE: No output of a displacement
- DIST1: Output of displacement 1
- DIST2: Output of displacement 2

In measurement mode Thickness measurement the displacement 1 and/or 2 can be output.

The selection of the distances 1 or 2 can be done only in the video mode when output via Ethernet. The other modes transmit the values according to the selected measurement program.

In distance measurement mode the controller accepts the OUTDIST\_ETH DIST1 command (no output with NONE).

In thickness measurement mode the controller accepts the OUTDIST\_ETH DIST1 DIST2 command (no output with NONE, it must always be both).

In multi peak measurement mode the controller accepts the OUTDIST\_ETH DIST1|... command (no output with NONE, it must always be all distances required for thickness calculation).

Controller IFC24x1	Controller IFC24x1MP		
OUTTHICK_RS422 NONE   [THICK12]	OUTTHICK_RS422 NONE   [THICK12]		
OUTTHICK ETH NONE [THICK12]	[THICK13][THICK14] [THICK15]		
	[THICK16][THICK23][THICK24]		
	[THICK25] [THICK26] [THICK34]		
	[THICK35][THICK36][THICK45]		
	[THICK46][THICK56]		
	OUTTHICK_ETH NONE   [THICK12]		
	[THICK13][THICK14] [THICK15]		
	[THICK16][THICK23][THICK24]		
	[THICK25][THICK26][THICK34]		
	[THICK35][THICK36][THICK45]		
	[THICK46][THICK56]		

Defines, which calculated layer thicknesses are output via RS422 or Ethernet.

- NONE: No output of calculated layer thickness
- THICK12: Output of the layer thickness between displacement 1 and 2

This setting is only available in measurement program "Thickness measurement" or "Multilayer measurement".

In video mode the difference between displacement 1 and 2 can be output in addition to the video signal. Displacement 1 and 2 is output automatically when transmitting the differential value via Ethernet.

In distance measurement mode the controller accepts the OUTTHICK\_ETH NONE command (no output with THICK12).

In thickness measurement mode the controller accepts the OUTTHICK\_ETH THICK12 command (no output with NONE).

#### A 7.5.2.3 Data Selection Statistic Values for RS422 and Ethernet

OUTSTATISTIC\_ETH NONE | ([MIN] [MAX] [PEAK2PEAK]) OUTSTATISTIC RS422 NONE | ([MIN] [MAX] [PEAK2PEAK])

- NONE: No output of statistics
- MIN: Output of the minimum
- MAX: Output of the maximum
- PEAK2PEAK: Output of peak to peak

#### A 7.5.2.4 Data Selection Optional Values for RS422 and Ethernet

```
OUTADD_ETH NONE | ([SHUTTER] [MEASRATE] [COUNTER] [TIMESTAMP]
[INTENSITY] [STATE] [ENC1] [ENC2] [ENC3] [TRIGTIMEDIFF])
OUTADD_RS422 NONE | ([SHUTTER] [MEASRATE] [COUNTER] [TIMESTAMP]
[INTENSITY] [STATE] [ENC1] [ENC2] [ENC3] [TRIGTIMEDIFF])
```

Declaration of further outputs.

- NONE: No further outputs
- SHUTTER: Output of the exposure time
- COUNTER: Output of measured value counter
- TIMESTAMP: Output of the time stamps
- INTENSITY: Output of the intensity parallel to any displacement value
- STATE: Output of the error status
- ENC1, ENC2, ENC3: Output of the encoder values 1, 2, 3
- TRIGTIMEDIFF: Output of the trigger time difference
- MEASRATE: Output of the measuring rate

More optional values can be out parallel via Ethernet.

# A 7.5.2.5 Switching on output of non linearized distances

SWITCHMD2[0|1]

- 0 Output of linearized distances standard in factory setting
- 1 Output of non linearized distances

The non linearized distance is output as 18-bit value via RS422 and Ethernet. When using the non linearized distances the calibration data are not applied. The assignment of the output value to a distance value is to be done by the user. Either non linearized or linearized distances can be output.

### A 7.5.2.6 Set Video Output

OUTVIDEO NONE | [RAW] [DARK] [LIGHT] [DARKTAB] [LIGHTTAB] [THRES]

Setting the data to be transmitted in a video transmission.

- NONE: No video signals
- RAW: Output of the unconditioned signal
- DARK: Output of the dark-corrected signal

- LIGHT: Output of the light source corrected signal
- DARKTAB: Output of the dark-correction table
- LIGHTTAB: Output of the light-correction table
- THRES: Output of the threshold table

Video signals can only be transmitted via the Ethernet interface.

#### A 7.5.3 Switching Outputs

#### A 7.5.3.1 Error Switching Outputs

```
ERROROUT1 NONE | ER1 | ER2 | ER12 | LI1 | LI2 | LI12
```

ERROROUT2 NONE | ER1 | ER2 | ER12 | LI1 | LI2 | LI12

Setting the error switching outputs.

- NONE: No output on the error switching outputs
- ER1: Switching output is switched in case of intensity error
- ER2: Switching output is switched in case of a measured value outside of the measuring range
- ER12: Switching output is switched in case of an intensity error or a measured value outside of the measuring range
- LI1: Switching output is switched in case of deceeding the lower limit
- LI2: Switching output is switched in case of exceeding the upper limit
- LI12: Switching output is switched in case of deceeding the lower limit or exceeding the upper limit

#### A 7.5.3.2 Limit Values

Controller IFC24x1	Controller IFC24x1MP		
ERRORLIMIT DIST1 DIST2	ERRORLIMIT DIST1 DIST2		
THICK12[ <unterer grenzwert=""></unterer>	DIST3 DIST4 DIST5 DIST6		
[ <oberer grenzwert="">]]</oberer>	THICK12 THICK13 THICK14		
	THICK15 THICK16 THICK23		
	THICK24 THICK25 THICK26		
	THICK34 THICK35 HICK36		
	THICK45 THICK46 THICK56		
	[ <unterer grenzwert=""> [<oberer< td=""></oberer<></unterer>		
	Grenzwert>]]		

Selection of the signal and setting the limits for a limit consideration via the error switching outputs.

- DIST1: The limits refer to the displacement 1
- DIST2: The limits refer to the displacement 2 (only for thickness measurement)
- THICK12: The limits refer to the difference between displacement 1 and 2 (only for thickness measurement)

The limits are specified in millimeters with six decimals and must be between -120.0 and 120.0.

#### A 7.5.3.3 Switching Level

ERRORLEVEL HIGH | LOW

- HIGH: Switching output is High upon error
- LOW: Switching output is Low upon error

#### A 7.5.4 Analog Output

#### A 7.5.4.1 Data Selection

Controller IFC24x1	Controller IFC24x1MP		
ANALOGOUT DIST1 DIST2 THICK12	ANALOGOUT DIST1 DIST2 DIST3		
	DIST4 DIST5 DIST6 THICK12		
	THICK13 THICK14 THICK15		
	THICK16 THICK23 THICK24		
	THICK25 THICK26 THICK34		
	THICK35 HICK36 THICK45		
	THICK46 THICK56		

Selection of the signal which should be output via the analog output.

DIST1: Output of displacement 1

- DIST2: Output of displacement 2
- THICK12: Output of the difference between displacement 1 and 2

#### A 7.5.4.2 Output Range

ANALOGRANGE NONE | 0-5V | 0-10V | -5-5V | -10-10V | 4-20mA

- NONE: No analog output (inactive)
- 0 5 V: The analog output outputs a voltage between 0 up to 5 volt.
- 0 10 V: The analog output outputs a voltage between 0 up to 10 volt.
- -5 5 V: The analog output outputs a voltage between -5 up to 5 volt.
- -10 10 V: The analog output outputs a voltage between -10 up to 10 volt.
- 4 20 mA: The analog output outputs an intensity of current of 4 up to 20 milliamperes.

#### A 7.5.4.3 Two-Point Scaling

ANALOGSCALE STANDARD | (TWOPOINT <Minimum measured value> <Maximum measured value>)

Setting the scaling of analog output.

The default scaling is for displacements -MR/2 up to MR/2 and for thickness measurement on 0 up to 2 MR (MR=Measuring range).

In case of minimum and maximum measured value is ,0', the default scaling is used.

The minimum and maximum measured value is to output in millimeters. The available output range of the analog output is then spread between the minimum and maximum measured value. The minimum and maximum measured value must be between -120.0 and 120.0.

The minimum and maximum measured value is processed with four decimal places.

### A 7.6 Measured Value Format

This Chapter describes the assembly of measured value frames. Informations to transfer via Ethernet or RS422 succeed, see A 7.7.

The data block has a fixed structure (sequence):

- Video signals (+ adjustments) (N \* 512 pixel \* 16 bit)
- Exposure time (1 \* 32 bit)
- Measuring rate (1 \* 32 Bit)
- Encoder (Ne \* 32 bit) (Ne = {0, 1, 2, 3})

- Measured value counter (1 \* 32 bit)
- Time stamp (1 \* 32 bit)
- Displacement values / Intensities (n \* (i+1) \* 32 bit)
- Error status (1 \* 32 Bit)
- Trigger time difference (1 \* 32 bit)
- Differences ((n-1) \* 32 bit)
- Statistic values (min/max/peak2peak) (per 32 bit)
- $n = \{0, 1, 2\} n = 0$  only for RS422

 $i = \{0, 1\} i = 0$  -> Intensity output off, i = 1 -> Intensity output activated

- n = 1 -> Displacement measurement
- n = 2 -> Thickness measurement

The measured value frame is set up dynamically, that means not selected values, see Fig. 83, are not transmitted.

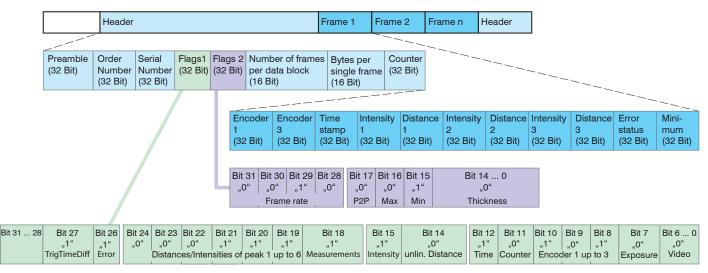


Fig. 83 Example for a data transmission via Ethernet

With Ethernet distance and thickness values are transmitted as 32 bit signed integer with 1 nm resolution.

### A 7.6.1 Video Signal

Video signals, which were calculated in signal processing, can be transmitted. A video signal consists of 512 pixel. A pixel is described by a 16-bit word. The used value range is 0 ...16383.

There are five available video signals:

- Raw signal
- Dark-corrected signal
- Light source corrected signal
- Dark values table
- Light values table
- Peak threshold

Data structure of video signals:

Pixel 0	Pixel 2	 Pixel 511
Raw signal, 16 bit	Raw signal	Raw signal
Dark corrected signal, 16 bit	Dark corrected signal	Dark corrected signal
Light source corrected signal, 16 bit	Light source corrected	Light source corrected
Dark values table, 16 bit	signal	 signal
Light values table, 16 bit	Dark values table	Dark values table
Peak threshold, 16 bit	Light values table	Light values table
	Peak threshold	Peak threshold

# A 7.6.2 Exposure Time

The data word to the exposure time is 32-bit wide during transmission via Ethernet. The resolution is 25 ns, in addition informations according to table 5-1 are transmitted.

Bit position	Description							
0 up to 19	Exposure time in 25 ns steps							
20 up to 27	Reserved (ca	n be non-zero)						
28 up to 31	Frame rate	Frame rate						
	Bits	Measuring rate	Max. exposure time [µs]					
	0	70 kHz	14.275					
	1	50 kHz	20					
	2	25 kHz	40					
	3	10 kHz	100					
	4	5 kHz	200					
	5	2.5 kHz	400					
	6	1 kHz	1000					
	7	0.3 kHz	3333.25					
	8	0.2 kHz	5000					
	9	0.1 kHz	10000					
	14	manual measuring rate	1/f					
	15	auotmatic mode						

Fig. 84 Table exposure time

- IFC2471: 0.3 kHz; 1 kHz; 2.5 kHz; 5 kHz; 10 kHz; 25 kHz; 50 kHz and 70 kHz
- IFC2471LED: 0.1 kHz; 1 kHz; 2.5 kHz; 5 kHz; 10 kHz; 25 kHz; 50 kHz and 70 kHz
- IFC2461: 0.1 kHz; 0.2 kHz; 0.3 kHz; 1 kHz; 2.5 kHz; 5 kHz, 10 kHz, 25 kHz
- IFC2451: 0.1 kHz; 0.2 kHz; 0.3 kHz; 1 kHz; 2.5 kHz; 5 kHz; 10 kHz

The output of the exposure time via the RS422 interface is effected by a resolution of 100 ns. For that the data word is 18 bits wide. The bits 9 up to 2 of the 32 bit data word are output by Ethernet.

#### A 7.6.3 Measuring rate

The generated measuring rate from the controller or the measured rate of the Syncln signal with Slave Sync operation mode.

RS422, 18 bit unsigned integer: Measuring rate = 20 000 000 / value

Ethernet, 32 bit unsigned integer: Measuring rate = 40 000 000 / value

#### A 7.6.4 Encoder

The encoder values for transmission can be selected individually. A 32 bit data word (unsigned integer) with the encoder position is output via Ethernet. Only the lower 18 bits of the encoder values are transmitted by the transmission via RS422.

#### A 7.6.5 Measured Value Counter

The transmission of the measured value counter via Ethernet is effected as 32 bit value (unsigned integer). On the RS422 interface, only the lower 18 bits of the profile counter are transmitted.

#### A 7.6.6 Time Stamp

Intrasystem the resolution of time stamp is 1  $\mu$ s. For the Ethernet transfer a 32 bit data word (unsigned integer) with the intrasystem resolution is output.

During transmission via RS422 only the bits 25 up to 8 of the time stamp are provided in a 18 bit data word. It follows a resolution of 0.25 ms, an overflow is effected after approximately 65 seconds.

#### A 7.6.7 Measurement Data (Displacements and Intensities)

An intensity (if selected) and a measurement value are transmitted for each selected displacement. For the Ethernet transmission 32 bit for each are used. The assembly of the data word for the intensity is shown in the following table, see Fig. 85. The resolution of the displacement values is 1 nm on the Ethernet line, the output is signed. The format for RS422 is described, see A 7.7.1.

Bit position	Description
0 - 10	Intensity of peak (100 % comply with 1024)
11 - 15	Reserved
16 - 29	Maximum of peak (from dark corrected signal)
30 - 31	Reserved

Fig. 85 Table Intensity

During transmission via RS422 only the ,Intensity of peak' is transmitted (the lower 10 bit).

The intensity value is determined using the following calculation rule:

- Max\_dark refers to the dark corrected signal.
- Max raw refers to the raw signal.
- Saturation refers to the AD range (2<sup>14-1</sup>).

### A 7.6.8 Trigger Time Difference

The trigger time difference is output via Ethernet as an unsigned 32 bit integer or via RS422 as an unsigned 18 bit integer with a resolution of 100 ns.

Value range 0... 33333 (IFC2471) or 0....100000 (IFC2541)

# A 7.6.9 Error Status

Bit position	Description
0	Peak starts too early.
1	Peak ends too late.
2	There is no peak present.
3	There are fewer peaks available as selected.
4	Not all peaks are calculated, peaks are too close to each other (from 3 peaks)
5	Peak is located in front of the measuring range (MR).
6	Peak is located behind the measuring range (MR)
7 up to 9	Reserved
10	Display value: orange, Ethernet LED, speed
11	Display value: green, Ethernet LED, link detection & activity
12, 13	Display value of LED 3 - State Off (0x0) green (0x1) red (0x2) yellow (0x3)
14	Reserved
15	Triggered measurement output. Trigger bit: 0 – continous output 1 – triggered output
16 up to 17	Display value LED 1 - Intensity Off (0x0) Green (0x1) Red (0x2) Yellow (0x3)
18 up to 19	Display value LED 2 – Range or measuring range. Off (0x0) Green (0x1) Red (0x2) Yellow (0x3)
20	Switching output error 1 is active
21	Switching output error 2 is active
24	Durability of the external light source exceeded.
26	External xenon light source is too hot.
27	External xenon light source is out of order.
28	Reserved
29	Overload of the switching outputs
30	DA converter error
	The DAC is used as a current output, then this bit is set when no load is present. A further function is to display an overheating of the DACs.
31	Reserved

During transmission via RS422 only the upper bits 16 up to 31 of error status word are transmitted. For the Ethernet transfer are all 32 bits ready to issue.

The error status represents the status of the entire video signal, independent from the linearized range. If masking (not equal to 0 ... 511) is used, the status of the masked area is shown.

#### A 7.6.10 Differences (Thicknesses)

Calculated differences between two displacements have the same format as the displacements.

At first, the selected differences between the displacement 1 and the other displacements are output, then these of displacement 2,...

The differences are displayed as 32 bit signed integer value with a resolution of 1 nm. The RS422 format is documented, see A 7.7.1.

#### A 7.6.11 Statistic Values

The statistic values have the same format as the displacements.

At first minimum, then maximum and at the end peak to peak is transmitted (if selected).

The statistic values are displayed as 32 bit signed integer value with a resolution of 1 nm or in format for the RS422 interface.

#### A 7.7 Measurement Data Format

#### A 7.7.1 Data Format RS422 Interface

The output of displacement measurement values, differences between measurement values and statistic values via RS422 need a subsequent conversion in mm. Other values as exposure time, time stamp, profile counter, encoder, intensities or status data are transmitted as 18 bit data words, a conversion is not required.

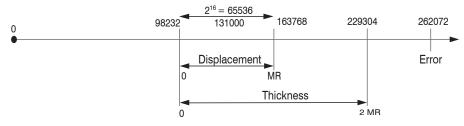
#### Measurement value 1:

	Preamble							
L-byte	0	0	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
M-byte	0	1	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6
H-byte	1	0	D17	D16	D15	D14	D13	D12

#### Measurement value 2 ... 32:

	Preamble		Data bits					
L-byte	0	0	D5	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
M-byte	0	1	D11	D10	D9	D8	D7	D6
H-byte	1	1	D17	D16	D15	D14	D13	D12

Value range for the displacement and thickness measurement:



131000 = Midrange for the displacement measurement

#### MR = Measuring range

The linearized measurement values can be converted in millimeters using the subsequent formula:

$$x = \frac{(d_{out} - 98232) * MR}{65536}$$

x = Displacement / Thickness in mm

 $d_{OUT} = digital output value$ 

MR = Measuring range in mm

All values greater than 262072 are error values and are defined as follows:

Error code	Description
262073	Scaling error RS422 interface underflow
262074	Scaling errors RS422 interface overflow
262075	Too much data for selected baud rate <sup>1)</sup>
262076	There is no peak present.
262077	Peak is located in front of the measuring range (MR)
262078	Peak is located behind the measuring range (MR)
262079	Measuring value cannot be calculated.

The restrictions for all other data outputs except the measurement value data are defined in the relevant Chapters, see 5

<sup>1)</sup> This error occurs when more data are to be output as with selected baud rate for the selected measuring can be transmitted. To remove the error, there are the following possibilities:

- Increase the baud rate, see A 7.3.6.3
- Decrease measuring rate, see A 7.4.1.4
- Decrease data; if 2 data words have been selected, then reduce to a data word, see A 7.5.2
- Reduce output data rate, see A 7.5.1.2

# A 7.7.2 Measurement Data Transmission to a Measurement Value Server via Ethernet

During the measurement data transmission to a measurement value server the sensor transmits each measurement value to the measurement value server or to the connected client after successful connection (TCP or UDP). Therefore no explicit requirement is necessary.

All distances and additional informations to be transmitted, which were recorded at a time, are combined to a measurement value frame. Different measurement value frames are combined to a measurement value block, which contains a header and fits a TCP/IP or UDP/IP packet. The header is mandatory at the start of a UDP or TCP packet. In case of changes of the transferred data or the frame rate a new header is automatically sent.

All measurement data and the header are transmitted in the little Endian format.

Preamble (32 bit)					
Order nu	mber (32 bit)				
Serial nur	mber (32 bit)				
Flags	1 (32 bit)				
Flags	2 (32 bit)				
Frame number (16 bit) Bytes per Frame (16 bit)					
Counter (32 bit)					

Header input	Description
Preamble	Identify the header
	0x4D454153 – Measurement data
	0x56494445 – Video data
Order number	
Serial number	
Flags1	Provide information about the content of the measurement value frame
Flags2	Provide information about the content of the measurement value frame inclusive frame rate
Bytes per Frame	Number of bytes, that contains a measurement value frame
Frame number	Number of frames, that cover this header
Counter	Counter on the number of processed measurement values

# Example: The data encoder 1, distance and intensity are transmitted.

	Header	Header					Frame 2	Fram	en I	Header
	 									_
Pream (32 Bi	 Order Number (32 Bit)				Number of frame per data block (16 Bit)	(32 Bit)	Encoder value (32 Bit)	Intensity value (32 Bit)	v Distan value (32 Bit	
					Bytes per single frame (16 Bit)					

# A 7.7.2.1 Description Flags1

Flag bit	Description
0	Video raw signal
1	Reserved
2	Video dark corrected
3	Video light corrected
4	Dark correction table
5	Light correction table
6	Threshold table
7	Exposure time
8 up to 10	Encoder 1 up to 3
11	Measured value counter
12	Time stamp
13	Reserved
14	Non linearized distance
15	Intensity output
16 up to 17	Reserved
18	Measurement value output
19 up to 24	Output of measurement values/Intensities of peak 1 up to 6
25	Reserved
26	Error status
27	Trigger time difference

# A 7.7.2.2 Description Flags2

Flag bit	Description			
0	Thickness of peak 1 up to 2			
1 up to 14	Reserved			
15	Statistics minimum			
16	Statistics maximum			
17	Statistics peak to peak			
18 up to 27	Reserved			
28 up to 31	Frame rate:			
	0 - 70 kHz			
	1 - 50 kHz			
	2 - 25 kHz			
	3 - 10 kHz			
	4 - 5 kHz			
	5 - 2.5 kHz			
	6 - 1 kHz			
	7 - 0.3 kHz			
	8 - 0.2 kHz			
	9 - 0.1 kHz			
	14 - manual measuring rate			
	15 - Automatic mode			

# A 7.7.2.3 Error Codes Ethernet Interface

Error code	Description
0x7fffffb	There is no peak present
0x7ffffffa	Peak is located in front of the measuring range (MR)
0x7ffffff9	Peak is located behind of the measuring range (MR)
0x7ffffff8	Measuring value cannot be calculated.

# A 7.7.3 Ethernet Video Signal Transmission

The video signal transmission is effected to a measurement value server via Ethernet analog to the measurement data transmission, see A 7.7.2, except, that only one video signal is transmitted in a measurement value block and each video signal must be requested individually, see A 7.4.1.7.

This measurement value block can vary also over different TCP/IP or UDP/IP packets depending on the size of the video signal.

The preamble for the video signals is 0x56494445 (conforms "VIDE").

#### Request a video signal:

MEASMODE VIDEO	-> Mode video
OUTVIDEO RAW	-> Output of the raw signal
OUTPUT ETHERNET	-> Output via the Ethernet
GETVIDEO	-> The raw signal is transmitted to a server/client

The Getvideo command requests one video image each. In addition measurement values and different signals can be transmitted, see A 7.3.2.1 up to, see A 7.5.2.4.

Advice: The correction tables as well as the threshold information must be always required together with one signal raw signal or dark corrected signal.

# A 7.8 Warning and Error Messages

The following table lists all warning messages:

Warning message	Description
W01 EtherCAT stopped.	
W02 Encoder-Triggerung stops.	
W03 Disable zeroing/mastering after change of sensor.	
W04 The output starts after switch to mode EtherCAT.	
W05 EtherCAT will be activated after saving the settings and restarting the controller.	
W06 High level of dark signal, please encure that the measurement object is within the measurement range. Fur- thermore, please protect the sensor connector from soiling.	

The following table lists all error messages:

Error message	Description
E01 unknown command	Unknown command (rights to small to read).
	A transmitted parameter has a wrong type or a wrong number of parameters were transmitted.
E03 internal error	Internal error code
E04 I/O operation failed	Can not write data to the output channel.
0	The entered command with the parameters is too long (greater than 255 bytes).
FUD ACCESS DEDIED	Access denied; login as professional is necessa- ry.
E07 the answer is too long to be dis- played by this interpreter.	Answer is too long.
E08 unknown parameter	Unknown Parameter
E09 the command or parameter pro- cessing has been canceled.	The command was canceled.
E10 the command or parameter pro- cessing is pending.	The command or parameter is in progress.
5	The parameter value is out of range of the value range.
-	For update only. The header of the update data contains an error.
•	For update only. Error during update data trans- mission.
	For update only: Timeout in the transfer of up- date data.
E15 update file is too big	For update only: The update data are too large.
E16 timeout command aborted	The corrections have been aborted with a time- out.
E17 processing aborted	
E18 a signal transfer is already active. Please stop this	A measurement value transmission is active. Stop the data transmission in order to execute the command.
FIG the file is not valid for this sensor i	The transferred parameter file is for a different
	sensor type.

E21 versions do not match.	The versions do not match (Setup file or material table).
E22 checksum invalid	Checksum invalid (Setup file or material table).
E23 the set of parameters does not exist.	The set of parameters does not exist.
E24 selection of section invalid	The selection of section is invalid.
E26 no signals selected.	There were no measurement values selected for transmission
E27 invalid combination of signal pa- rameters - please select at least one distance value.	Invalid signal combination; please select a dis- tance value.
E28 the entry already exists.	The material already exists.
E30 master value is out of range	The master value is out of range.
E31 The material was not found by given name.	The selected material does not exist in the mate- rial list.
E32 timeout, get no measurement values	Timeout, no measurements available
E33 wrong parameter count	Too high or too small number of parameters.
E34 The controller has no calibration data	The controller has no calibration data.
E35 cannot start transfer of measure- ment data.	Measurement value output cannot boot (only adjustments).
E36 Encoders minimum is greater than maximum.	The minimum value of the encoder is greater than its maximum value.
E37 ROI start must be lower than end.	The start value for masking must be less than the end value.
E38 too much output values for RS422 enabled.	Too much output values for RS422 enabled.
E39 sensor head is empty.	Sensor is not available.
E41 The given passwords are not equal.	Errors in the repeated entry of the new password
E42 Encoder start value must be less than maximum encoder value.	The initial encoder value must be less than the maximum value of the encoder.
E43 Software triggering is not active.	Software triggering is not enabled, no software trigger pulse can be triggered.
E44 Material table full	There are already 20 materials stored in the database.
E45 No video signal now	No video signal is available at this time. The intervals between the queries must be increased.
E46 Receive unsupported character	An unsupported character is received.
E47 The selection of signals is denied in current measurement mode.	In current measurement mode the signal selec- tion cannot be made.
E48 Material table is empty.	No entry in the material table.
E49 For less than three peaks please use distance or thickness measure- ment.	Use the distance or thickness measurement, if you receive less than three peaks
E50 No video averaging is allowed for Two-Time-mode.	With the "Two-Time" exposure mode video averaging is not allowed.
E51 The given signal is not selected for output.	The current signal is not selected for output.
E52 No new dark correction data available.	First perform a dark correction to save a new reference contamination.
E53 Refractivity correction is disabled, using vacuum for material settings.	Material setting is not possible with deactivated refractive correction.

E54 Output of non linearized values is enabled or was trying to enable. Statistic, averaging and analog output are not available.	During the output of non linearized focuses the use of statistics, averaging and analog output is not possible.
E55 Synchronisation as slave and triggering at level or edge are not possible at the same time.	Synchronisation as Slave and triggering at level or edge were tried to activate at the same time. It can be used only one of the two modes.

# A 8 EtherCAT Documentation

EtherCAT® is, from the Ethernet viewpoint, a single, large Ethernet station that transmits and receives Ethernet telegrams. Such an EtherCAT system consists of an EtherCAT master and up to 65535 EtherCAT slaves.

Master and slaves communicate via a standard Ethernet wiring. On-the-fly processing hardware is used in each slave. The incoming Ethernet frames are directly processed by the hardware. Relevant data are extracted or added from the frame. The frame is subsequently forwarded to the next EtherCAT® slave device. The completely processed frame is sent back from the last slave device. Various protocols can be used in the application level. CANopen over EtherCAT technology (CoE) is supported here. In the CANopen protocol, an object tree with Service Data Objects (SDO) and Process Data Objects (PDO) is used to manage the data.

Further information can be obtained from ® Technology Group (www.ethercat.org) or Beckhoff GmbH, (www.beckhoff.com).

# A 8.1 Preamble

#### A 8.1.1 Structure of EtherCAT®-Frames

The transfer of data occurs in Ethernet frames with a special Ether type (0x88A4). Such an EtherCAT® frame consists of one or several EtherCAT® telegrams, each of which is addressed to individual slaves / storage areas. The telegrams are either transmitted directly in the data area of the Ethernet frame or in the data area of the UDP datagram. An EtherCAT® telegram consists of an EtherCAT® header, the data area and the work counter (WC). The work counter is incremented by each addressed EtherCAT® slave that exchanged the corresponding data.

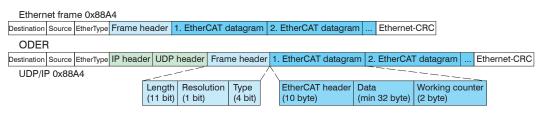


Fig. 86 Setup of EtherCAT frames

### A 8.1.2 EtherCAT® Services

In EtherCAT® services for the reading and writing of data are specified in the physical memory of the slave hardware. The following EtherCAT® services are supported by the slave hardware:

- APRD (Autoincrement physical read, Reading of a physical area with auto-increment addressing)
- APWR (Autoincrement physical write, Writing of a physical area with auto-increment addressing)
- APRW (Autoincrement physical read write, Reading and writing of a physical area with auto-increment addressing)
- FPRD (Configured address read, Reading of a physical area with fixed addressing)
- FPWR (Configured address write, Writing of a physical area with fixed addressing)
- FPRW (Configured address read write, Reading and writing of a physical area with fixed addressing)
- BRD (Broadcast Read, Broadcast Reading of a physical area for all slaves)
- BWR (Broadcast Write, Broadcast Writing of a physical area for all slaves)
- LRD (Logical read, Reading of a logical storage area)
- LWR (Logical write, Writing of a logical storage area)
- LRW (Logical read write, Reading and writing of a logical storage area)
- ARMW (Auto increment physical read multiple write, Reading of a physical area with auto-increment addressing, multiple writing)
- FRMW (Configured address read multiple write, Reading of a physical area with fixed addressing, multiple writing)

### A 8.1.3 Addressing and FMMUs

In order to address a slave in the EtherCAT® system, various methods from the master can be used. The confocalDT 24x1 supports as full slave:

- Position addressing

The slave device is addressed via its physical position in the EtherCAT® segment. The services used for this are APRD, APWR, APRW.

- Node addressing

The slave device is addressed via a configured node address, which was assigned by the master during the commissioning phase.

The services used for this are FPRD, FPWR and FPRW.

- Logical addressing

The slaves are not addressed individually; instead, a segment of the segment-wide logical 4-GB address is addressed. This segment can be used by a number of slaves. The services used for this are LRD, LWR and LRW.

The local assignment of physical slave memory addresses and logical segment-wide addresses is implemented via the field bus Memory Management Units (FMMUs). The configuration of the slave FMMUs is implemented by the master. The FMMU configuration contains a start address of the physical memory in the slave, a logical start address in the global address space, length and type of the data, as well as the direction (input or output) of the process data.

# A 8.1.4 Sync Manager

Sync Managers serve the data consistency during the data exchange between Ether-CAT® master and slaves. Each Sync Manager channel defines an area of the application memory. The confocalDT 24x1 has four channels:

- Sync-Manager Channel 0: Sync Manager 0 is used for mailbox write transfers (mailbox from master to slave).
- Sync-Manager Channel 1: Sync Manager 1 is used for mailbox read transfers (mailbox from slave to master).
- Sync-Manager Channel 2: Sync Manager 2 is usually used for process output data. Not used in the sensor.
- Sync-Manager Channel 3: Sync Manager 3 is used for process input data. It contains the Tx PDOs that are specified by the PDO assignment object 0x1C13 (hex.).

# A 8.1.5 EtherCAT State Machine

The EtherCAT® state machine is implemented in each EtherCAT®. Directly after switching on the confocalDT 24x1, the state machine is in the "Initialization" state. In this state, the master has access to the DLL information register of the slave hardware. The mailbox is not yet initialized, i.e. communication with the application (sensor software) is not yet possible. During the transition to the pre-operational state, the Sync Manager channels are configured for the mailbox communication. In the "Pre-Operational" state, communication via the mailbox is possible, and it can access the object directory and its objects. In this state, no process data communication occurs. During the transition to the process inputs and the corresponding FMMU are configured by the master. Mailbox communication continues to be possible in the "Safe-Operational" state. The process data communication runs for the inputs. The outputs are in the "safe" state. In the "Operational" state, process data communication runs for the inputs.

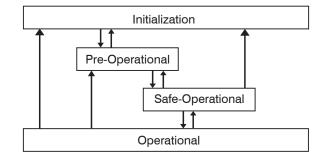


Fig. 87 EtherCAT State Machine

# A 8.1.6 CANopen over EtherCAT

The application level communication protocol in EtherCAT is based on the communication profile CANopen DS 301 and is designated either as "CANopen over EtherCAT" or CoE. The protocol specifies the object directory in the sensor, as well as the communication objects for the exchange of process data and acyclic messages. The sensor uses the following message types:

- Process Data Object (PDO). The PDO is used for the cyclic I/O communication, therefore for process data.
- Service Data Object (SDO). The SDO is used for acyclic data transmission.

The object directory is described in the chapter CoE Object Directory.

# A 8.1.7 Process Data PDO Mapping

Process Data Objects (PDOs) are used for the exchange of time-critical process data between master and slaves. Tx PDOs are used for the transmission of data from the slaves to the master (inputs), Rx PDOs are used to transmit data from the master to the slaves (outputs); not used in the confocalDT 24x1. The PDO mapping defines which application objects (measurement data) are transmitted into a PDO.

The confocalDT 24x1 has a Tx PDO for the measuring data. The following measurements are available as process data:

- Distance 1 Ethernet/EtherCAT (default)
- Distance 1 Ethernet/EtherCAT
- Difference 1-2 Ethernet/EtherCAT
- Intensity 1 Ethernet/EtherCAT
- Intensity 1 Ethernet/EtherCAT
- Shutter time Ethernet/EtherCAT
- Encoder 1 Ethernet/EtherCAT
- Encoder 2 Ethernet/EtherCAT
- Encoder 3 Ethernet/EtherCAT
- Value counter Ethernet/EtherCAT
- Timestamp Ethernet/EtherCAT
- Error state Ethernet/EtherCAT
- Statistic minimum value Ethernet/EtherCAT
- Statistic maximum value Ethernet/EtherCAT
- Statistic peak-peak value Ethernet/EtherCAT

Distance 2 Difference 1-2 (Thickness) Intensity 1 Intensity 2 Exposure time (32 bit) Encoder 1 (32 bit) Encoder 2 (32 bit) Encoder 3 (32 bit) Measured value counter (32 bit) Timestamp (32 bit) Error Feld Statistical value (minimum) Statistical value (maximum)

Distance 1

Statistical value (peak to peak)

In EtherCAT the PDOs are transported in objects of the Sync Manager channel. The sensor uses the Sync Manager channel SM3 for input data (Tx data). The PDO assignments of the Sync Manager can only be changed in the "Pre-Operational" state. The mapping in the confocalDT 24x1 is not carried out directly in the object 0x1A00, but rather by switching on and off individual measurements in the application object 0x21B0. The mapping result is available to the master after reloading the object directory.

**Note:** Subindex 0h of the object 0x1A00 contains the number of valid entries within the mapping report. This number also represents the number of application variables (parameters) that should be transmitted/received with the corresponding PDO. The subindices from 1h up to the number of objects contain information about the depicted application variables. The mapping values in the CANopen objects are coded in hexadecimal form.

The following table contains an example of the entry structure of the PDO mapping:

U			5	 0
MSB				LSB
31	6 15	8	7	0
Index e.g. 0x6065 (16 bits)	Subindex e.g. 0x02	2	Object len e.g. 20h	

Fig. 88 Entry structure of the PDO mapping, example

### A 8.1.8 Service Data SDO Service

Service Data Objects (SDOs) are primarily used for the transmission of data that are not time critical, e.g. parameter values. EtherCAT specifies the SDO services as well as the SDO information services: SDO services make possible the read/write access to entries in the CoE object directory of the device. SDO information services make it possible to read the object directory itself and to access the properties of the objects. All parameters of the measuring device can be read or changed in this way, or measurements can be transmitted. A desired parameter is addressed via index and subindex within the object directory.

# A 8.2 CoE – Object Directory

The CoE object directory (CANopen over EtherCAT) contains all the configuration data of the sensor. The objects in CoE object directory can be accessed using the SDO services. Each object is addressed using a 16-bit index.

#### A 8.2.1 Communication Specific Standard Objects (CiA DS-301)

Overview		
Index (h)	Name	Description
1000	Device type	Device type
1001	Error register	Error register
1003	Error history	Predefined error field
1008	Device name	Manufacturer device name
1009	Hardware version	Hardware version
100A	Software version	Software version
1018	Identity	Device identification
1A00	Sample 0	TxPDO mapping
1A01		
1407		
1A27	Sample x	TxPDO Mapping (for oversampling)
1C00	Sync. manager type	Sync. manager type
1C13	TxPDO assign	TxPDO assign
1C33	SM input parameter	Synchronous mode parameter (DC)

#### **Object 1000h: Device type**

[	1000	VAR	Device type	0x00200000	Unsigned32	ro

Provides informations about the used device profile and the device type.

#### Object 1001h: Error register

1001	VAR	Error register	0x00	Unsigned8	ro	
The error	reaister cor	Itains generic information	s about the kir	nd of the intern	allv adiacent	

device errors. The general error bit is set on each case.

#### Structure of error register

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Manufacturer	Reser- ved	Reser- ved	Reser- ved	Temperature	Voltage	Current	Gene- ral

#### **Object 1003h: Predefined error field**

1003	RECORD	Error history			
Subindio	ces				
0	VAR	Number of entries	1	Unsigned8	rw
1	VAR			Unsigned32	ro

The occurring device errors are registered here. The last error is saved in the error field. The entry under Sub-Index 0 contains the number of saved errors, by writing the value 0, the errors are eliminated.

#### Object 1008h: Manufacturer device name

1008	VAR	Device name	IFC24x1	Visible String	ro

#### **Object 1009h: Hardware version**

1009 VAR Hardware version V x.xxx Visible String ro
---

# **Object 100Ah: Software version**

 	1				
100A	VAR	Software version	V x.xxx	Visible String	ro

# Object 1018h: Device identification

1018	RECORD	Identity			
Subindice	es				
0	VAR	Number of entries	4	Unsigned8	ro
1	VAR	Vendor ID	0x00000607	Unsigned32	ro
2	VAR	Product code	0x003EDE73	Unsigned32	ro
3	VAR	Revision	0x00010000	Unsigned32	ro
4	VAR	Serial number	0x009A4435	Unsigned32	ro

The article number is deposit in the product code, the serial number of the sensor in serial number.

# Object 1A00h: TxPDO Mapping

				1	1
1A00	RECORD	TxPDO Mapping			
Subindice	es				
0	VAR	Number of entries	43	Unsigned8	ro
1	VAR	Shutter time Ethernet/ EtherCAT	0x60650120	Unsigned32	ro
2	VAR	Encoder 1	0x60650220	Unsigned32	ro
3	VAR	Encoder 2	0x60650320	Unsigned32	ro
4	VAR	Encoder 3	0x60650420	Unsigned32	ro
5	VAR	Value counter Ethernet/ EtherCAT	0x60650520	Unsigned32	ro
6	VAR	Timestamp Ethernet/ EtherCAT	0x60650620	Unsigned32	ro
7	VAR	Unlin 1	0x60650720	Unsigned32	ro
8	VAR	Intensity 1	0x60650820	Unsigned32	ro
9	VAR	Distance 1 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	0x60650920	Signed32	ro
10	VAR	Unlin 2	0x60650A20	Unsigned32	ro
11	VAR	Intensity 2	0x60650B20	Unsigned32	ro
12	VAR	Distance 2 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	0x60650C20	Signed32	ro
25	VAR	Errorstate Ethernet/ EtherCAT	0x60651920	Unsigned32	ro
26	VAR	Difference 1-2 Ethernet/EtherCAT	0x60651A20	Signed32	ro
41	VAR	Statistic minimum va- lue Ethernet/EtherCAT	0x60652920	Signed32	ro
42	VAR	Statistic maximum va- lue Ethernet/EtherCAT	0x60652A20	Signed32	ro
43	VAR	Statistic peak-peak va- lue Ethernet/EtherCAT	0x60652B20	Signed32	ro

# Objects 1A01 - 1A27: TxPDO Mapping

Contents are identical to object 1A00. The objects 1A01 - 1A27 are used for oversampling, see A 8.6.

#### Object 1C00h: Synchronous manager type

1C00	RECORD	Sync manager type			ro
Subindice	es	·			
0	VAR	Number of entries	4	Unsigned8	ro
1	VAR	Sync manager 0	0x01	Unsigned8	ro
2	VAR	Sync manager 1	0x02	Unsigned8	ro
3	VAR	Sync manager 2	0x03	Unsigned8	ro
4	VAR	Sync manager 3	0x04	Unsigned8	ro

Object 10	C13h: TxPE	)O assign					
1C13	RECORD	TxPDO assign					
Subindice	Subindices						
0	VAR	Number of entries	1	Unsigned8	ro		
1	VAR	Subindex 001	0x1A00	Unsigned16	ro		

Further subindices contain other inputs (0x1A01, 0x1A02, ...) when oversampling, see A 8.6.

### **Object 1C33h: SM input parameter**

1C33	RECORD	SM input parameter			ro
Subindice	es				
0	VAR	Number of entries	32	Unsigned8	ro
1	VAR	Sync mode	0	Unsigned8	ro
2	VAR	Cycle time	100000	Unsigned32	ro
4	VAR	Sync modes supported	0x4005	Integer16	ro
5	VAR	Minimum cycle time	1000000	Integer32	ro
6	VAR	Calc and copy time	0	Integer32	ro
8	VAR	Get cycle time	0	Integer16	rw
11	VAR	SM event missed counter	0	Integer32	ro
12	VAR	Cycle exceeded counter	0	Integer32	ro
32	VAR	Sync error	FALSE	Bool	ro

# A 8.2.2 Manufacturer Specific Objects

#### Overview

	Overview						
Index (h)	Name	Description					
2001	User level	Login, logout, change password					
2005	Controller info	Controller informations (further)					
2010	Setup	Load/save settings					
2011	Correction	Light and dark correction					
2101	Reset	Reset					
2105	Factory settings	Reset factory settings					
2140	Video	Select video signal, correction tables					
2150	Sensor	Sensor informations					
2152	Select sensor	Selection of the sensor					
2154	Measuring program	Measuring program					
2156	Multilayer options	Options for multilayer measurement					
2181	Averaging/error handling/statistics	Averaging/error handling/statistics and spike correction					
21B0	Digital interfaces	Digital interfaces, data selection					
21C0	Ethernet	Ethernet parameter (IP address, subnet, gateway)					
21D0	Analog output	Analog output					
21E0	Zeroing/mastering	Zeroing/mastering					
21F1	Switching outputs	Switching outputs					
2250	Shutter mode/measuring range	Exposure mode/measuring range					
2410	Trigger mode	Trigger modes					
2550	Threshold	Peak detection threshold					
25A0	Encoder	Encoder					
2711	Range of interest	Reduction of Region of Interest					
2800	Material info	Material informations					
2801	Material selection	Material selection					
2802	Material table edit	Material table edit					
6010	Video signal	Video signal					
603F	Sensor error	Error message of the sensor					
6065	Measvalues	Measurement values					

#### Object 2001h: User level

2001	RECORD	User level					
Subindices							
0	VAR	Number of entries	7	Unsigned8	ro		
1	VAR	Actual user	х	Unsigned8	ro		
2	VAR	Login	*****	Visible string	wo		
3	VAR	Logout	FALSE	BOOL	rw		
4	VAR	Default user	х	Unsigned8	rw		
5	VAR	Password old	****	Visible string	wo		
6	VAR	Password new	****	Visible string	wo		
7	VAR	Password repeat	****	Visible string	wo		

Further details can be found in the section Login, see 6.1 and Change User Level, see A 7.3.2.

Actual user, Default user:

- 0 User
- 1 Professional

For changing the password, the three password fields Old, New and Repeat must be described in the specified sequence. The maximum length of a password is 31 characters.

#### **Object 2005h: Controller informations (further)** 000-. .

....

2005	RECORD	Controller Info			ro
Subindic	es				
0	VAR	Number of entries	8	Unsigned8	ro
1	VAR	Name	IFC24x1	Visible String	ro
5	VAR	Serial No	XXXXXXXX	Visible String	ro
6	VAR	Option No	XXX	Visible String	ro
8	VAR	Article No	XXXXXXX	Visible String	ro
11	VAR	Temperature	X.XX	FLOAT32	ro

The temperature (float value) is output in degree Celsius with 0.25 °C resolution.

Further details can be found in the section Controller information, see A 7.3.1.2.

#### **Object 2010h: Loading/saving settings**

-

Further details can be found in the section Load/save settings in the controlle, see 5.7 and Parameter management, load/save settings, see A 7.3.7

#### **Object 2011h: Corrections**

2011	RECORD	Correction			ro
Subindic	es				
0	VAR	Number of entries	3	Unsigned8	ro
1	VAR	Dark correction	FALSE	BOOL	rw
2	VAR	Light correction	FALSE	BOOL	rw
3	VAR	Correction result	0x00	Unsigned32	rw
4	VAR	Threshold for dark correction	50.0	FLOAT32	rw

Further details can be found in the section Dark reference, see 5.5, Light source reference, see 6.15, Dark correction, see A 7.3.3.4 and Light correction, see A 7.3.3.6.

After triggering a correction the status (error code) of the correction can be queried under Correction result. You can read under section Error codes, see A 8.3, for the possible error codes.

#### **Object 2101h: Reset**

ſ			-			
	2101	VAR	Reset	FALSE	BOOL	rw
_						

Further details can be found in the section Booting the sensor, see A 7.3.1.6.

#### **Object 2105h: Factory settings**

2105	2105 RECORD Factory settings				ro	
Subindices						
0	VAR	Number of entries	3	Unsigned8	ro	
1	VAR	Factory settings	FALSE	BOOL	rw	
2	VAR	Keep device settings	FALSE	BOOL	rw	
3	VAR	Reset current setup	FALSE	BOOL	rw	

Further details can be found in the section Extras, see 6.13, and Default settings, see A 7.3.7.3.

# Object 2140h: Video

2140	RECORD	Video			ro	
Subindices						
0	VAR	Number of entries	3	Unsigned8	ro	
1	VAR	Video type	0	Unsigned8	rw	
2	VAR	Dark table	xxh xxh	Octed String [1024]	ro	
3	VAR	Light table	xxh xxh	Octed String [1024]	ro	

The entry Video type defines which signal is available in 0x6010:01. The options are:

- 1 output of the raw signal
- 3 output of the dark corrected signal
- 4 output of the light source corrected signal

With factory setting the video type is set on 0. If you change from measurement mode to video mode, the video type is set on 3 as long as the value was 0 before.

The set value is stored in a setup, command STORE.

In the subindices 2 and 3 of the object the correction tables can be read. Subindice 2 contains the dark level table and subindice 3 the light source table. Both are 1024 bytes long byte vectors (Octed String). As in the entry 0x6010: 01, the byte vector contains 16 bit values for each 512 pixels.

#### Object 2150h: Sensor

RECORD	Sensor			1				
	Sensor			ro				
Subindices								
VAR	Number of entries	5	Unsigned8	ro				
VAR	Sensor info	IFS24xx-xx	Visible String	ro				
VAR	Sensor range	XX.XXXXXX	FLOAT32	ro				
VAR	Sensor serial No	XXXXXXXX	Visible String	ro				
VAR	Sensor article No	XXXXXXXX	Visible String	ro				
VAR	Sensor option No	XXX	Visible String	ro				
	/AR /AR /AR /AR /AR	/ARNumber of entries/ARSensor info/ARSensor range/ARSensor serial No/ARSensor article No	/ARNumber of entries5/ARSensor infoIFS24xx-xx/ARSensor rangexx.xxxxxx/ARSensor serial Noxxxxxxxx/ARSensor article Noxxxxxxxx	/ARNumber of entries5Unsigned8/ARSensor infoIFS24xx-xxVisible String/ARSensor rangexx.xxxxxxFLOAT32/ARSensor serial NoxxxxxxxxVisible String/ARSensor article NoxxxxxxxxVisible String				

Further details can be found in the section Sensor, see A 7.3.3.

#### **Object 2152h: Sensor selection**

2152 RECORD		Select sensor			ro
Subindices					
0	VAR	Number of entries	1	Unsigned8	ro
1 VAR		Number of sensor	x	Unsigned8	rw

Further details can be found in the section Select sensor, see 5.3.4 and Sensor number, see A 7.3.3.2.

#### **Object 2154h: Measuring program**

2154	VAR	Measuring program	0x00	Unsigned8	rw
------	-----	-------------------	------	-----------	----

Further details can be found in the section Measurement program, see 5.3.2 and Measurement mode, see A 7.4.1.1.

Measuring program:

- 0 Displacement measurement
- 1 Thickness measurement
- 2 Multilayer measurement
- 3 Video signal output

2156	RECORD	Multilayer options			ro
Subinzes					
0	VAR	Number of entries	2	Unsigned8	ro
1	VAR	Number of peaks for multilayer	2	Unsigned8	rw
2	VAR	Disable refractivity correction	FALSE	BOOL	rw

#### Objekt 2156h: Multilayer measurement options

Further details can be found in the chapter multilayer measurement, see A 4.

#### Refrac count:

Number of processed distances (2 ... 6)

#### Disable refractivity correction:

Deactivation of the refractive index correction

#### Objekt 2158h: Thickness measurements options

2158	RECORD	Thickness options			ro
Subinzes					
0	VAR	Number of entries	1	Unsigned8	ro
1	VAR	Disable refractivity correction	FALSE	BOOL	rw

Further details can be found in the chapter multilayer measurement, see A 4.

Disable refractivity correction:

Deactivation of the refractive index correction

#### **Objekt 2161h: Peak position**

		2161	VAR	Peak position	0	Unsigned8	rw
--	--	------	-----	---------------	---	-----------	----

The peak/peaks that is/are evaluated in the distance or thickness measurement mode can be set using this command.

Standard: first peak / first and second peak

In order to get a reproducible measurement result, the default setting should be changed only in urgent cases.

Position for displacement		Position for thic	kness measurement
0	first peak	0	first and last peak
1	last peak	1	second to last and last peak
2	first peak	2	first and second peak
3	highest peak	3	highest and second highest peak

Object 210 m. Averaging, error processing and statistics					
2181	RECORD	Averaging/error hand- ling/statistics			ro
Subindic					
0	VAR	Number of entries	15	Unsigned8	ro
1	VAR	Measured value averaging type	x	Unsigned32	rw
2	VAR	Number of values for moving average	x	Unsigned32	rw
3	VAR	Number of values for median	x	Unsigned32	rw
4	VAR	Number of values for recursive average	x	Unsigned32	rw
5	VAR	Statistic depth	x	Unsigned8	rw
6	VAR	Reset statistic	FALSE	BOOL	rw
7	VAR	Error handling	x	Unsigned8	rw
8	VAR	Number of held values	x	Unsigned16	rw
9	VAR	Video averaging	x	Unsigned8	rw
10	VAR	Signal for statistics	x	Unsigned8	rw
11	VAR	Reduce video signal	x	Unsigned8	rw
12	VAR	Use spike correction	FALSE	BOOL	rw
13	VAR	Spike correction evaluation length	X	Unsigned32	rw
14	VAR	Spike correction range	XX	FLOAT32	rw
15	VAR	Spike correction count	x	Unsigned32	rw

#### Object 2181h: Averaging, error processing and statistics

Further details can be found in the section Averaging/ error handling/ statistics, see 6.3, and Video averaging, see A 7.4.2.2.

Measured value averaging type:

- 0 No averaging
- 1 Moving average
- 2 Recursive average
- 3 Median

(Number of values for moving average: 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512 and 1024)

age (Number of values for recursive average: 2...32768) (Number of values for median: 3, 5, 7 and 9)

Statistic depth:

0, 2, 4, 8, 16...16384; 0 = infinite

Error handling:

- 0 Output of error value
- 1 Hold last valid value for a number of measurement values

```
(Number of held values: 0....1024, 0 = infinite)
```

Video averaging:

- 0 No averaging
- 1 Recursive average of 2 video signals
- 2 Recursive average of 4 video signals
- 3 Recursive average of 8 video signals
- 4 Moving average of 2 video signals
- 5 Moving average of 4 video signals
- 6 Moving average of 3 video signals
- 7 Median of 3 video signals

Statistic signal: Measurement, for which the statistics is calculated (only in measurement program multilayer)

- 0 Distance 1
- 1 Distance 2
- 2 Distance 3
- 3 Distance 4
- 4 Distance 5
- 5 Distance 6
- 32 Difference 1 2
- 33 Difference 1 3
- 34 Difference 1 4
- 35 Difference 1 5
- 36 Difference 1 6
- 37 Difference 2 3
- 38 Difference 2 4
- 39 Difference 2 5
- 40 Difference 2 6
- 41 Difference 3 4
- 42 Difference 3 5
- 43 Difference 3 6
- 44 Difference 4 5
- 45 Difference 4 6
- 56 Difference 5 6

The data selection is possible according to the selected measurement program: Only Distance 1 in case of displacement measurement.

Reduce video signal

- 0 No reduction (512 points and 16 bits)
- 1 Reduction on 512 points and 8 bits
- 2 Reduction on 256 points and 16 bits
- 3 Reduction on 256 points and 8 bits

In case of reduction on 8 bits the original video signal is divided by 64.

Use spike correction

- 0 without spike correction
- 1 with spike correction

Spike correction evaluation length: Number of evaluated values (1 ... 10)

Spike correction range: max. tolerance range in mm (0.0000000 ... 100.0000000)

Spike correction count: Number of corrected values (1 ... 100)

valuesj					
21B0	RECORD	Digital interfaces			ro
Subindic	es				
0	VAR	Number of entries	37	Unsigned8	ro
1	VAR	Output device	5	Unsigned8	rw
2	VAR	RS422 baud rate	x	Unsigned32	rw
3	VAR	Ethernet/EtherCAT	TRUE	BOOL	rw
4	VAR	Distance 1 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	TRUE	BOOL	rw
5	VAR	Distance 2 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
6	VAR	Distance 3 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
7	VAR	Distance 4 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
8	VAR	Distance 5 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
9	VAR	Distance 6 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
10	VAR	Intensity Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
11	VAR	Encoder 1 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
12	VAR	Encoder 2 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
13	VAR	Encoder 3 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
14	VAR	Value counter Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
15	VAR	Statistic minimum value Ethernet/EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
16	VAR	Statistic maximum value Ethernet/EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
17	VAR	Statistic peak-peak va- lue Ethernet/EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
18	VAR	Timestamp Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
19	VAR	Shutter time Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
20	VAR	Error state Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
21	VAR	Difference 1-2 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
22	VAR	Difference 1-3 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
23	VAR	Difference 1-4 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
24	VAR	Difference 1-5 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
25	VAR	Difference 1-6 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw

Object 21B0h: Digital interfaces, selection of transmitted data (measurement values)

26	VAR	Difference 2-3 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
27	VAR	Difference 2-4 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
28	VAR	Difference 2-5 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
29	VAR	Difference 2-6 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
30	VAR	Difference 3-4 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
31	VAR	Difference 3-5 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
32	VAR	Difference 3-6 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
33	VAR	Difference 4-5 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
34	VAR	Difference 4-6 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
35	VAR	Difference 5-6 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	FALSE	BOOL	rw
36	VAR	Un lin	FALSE	BOOL	rw
37	VAR	Video as PDO	FALSE	BOOL	rw

Output device:

- 0 No output channel
  - 1 RS422
- 5 EtherCAT

RS422 baud rate: 9600, 115200, 230400, 460800, 691200, 921600, 1500000, 2000000, 3500000, 4000000

Ethercat-Ethernet: (Change of interface)

- 0 Ethernet (works only from restarting, previously setup store)
- 1 EtherCAT

Subindices 4 ... 36: Data selection for the PDO mapping

Distance 1 to Distance 6 are only individually selectable in the measurement program multilayer measurement and video, otherwise, these values are selected automatically according to the selected measurement program.

Difference 1-2 to Difference 5-6 can be selected in the measurement program multilayer and video.

Intensity - Intensities for all displacements, that are transmitted.

Un lin - Switching on output of non linearized distances

- 0 Output of non linearized distances (factory setting)
- 1 Output of non linearized distances

Video as PDO:

Transmitting the video signal and the additionally activated measurement values by PDO. This is only possible in the measurement program video. Transmitting the video signal reduces the transmission rate by half (e.g. transmission instead of the set 1 kHz only with 500 Hz). In addition, the transmission limits the maximum measurement frequency to 1 kHz (500 Hz transmission frequency).

## **Object 21C0h: Ethernet**

21C0	RECORD	Ethernet			ro				
Subindic	Subindices								
0	VAR	Number of entries	8	Unsigned8	ro				
1	VAR	IP address	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX	Visible String	rw				
2	VAR	Subnet mask	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX	Visible String	rw				
3	VAR	Gateway	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX	Visible String	rw				
4	VAR	DHCP	FALSE	BOOL	rw				
5	VAR	Measured value server protocol	0	Unsigned8	rw				
6	VAR	Measured value server IP-Address	xxx.xxx.xxx	Visible String	rw				
7	VAR	Measured value server port	x	Unsigned16	rw				
8	VAR	MAC address	XX.XX.XX.XX.XX	Visible String	ro				

Further details can be found in the section Ethernet IP settings, see A 7.3.6.1 and Settings for the Ethernet measured value transfer, see A 7.3.6.2.

DHCP:

- 0 Static IP address
- 1 DHCP

Measured value server protocol:

- 0 No transmission
- 1 Client/TCP
- 2 Client/UDP
- 3 Server/TCP

### **Object 21D0h: Analog output**

		<u> </u>							
21D0	RECORD	Analog output			ro				
Subindic	Subindices								
0	VAR	Number of entries	1	Unsigned8	ro				
1	VAR	Analog output	x	Unsigned8	rw				
2	VAR	Analog output signal	x	Unsigned8	rw				
3	VAR	Analog output type of scaling	x	Unsigned8	rw				
4	VAR	Analog output two-point-scaling start	x.x	FLOAT32	rw				
5	VAR	Analog output two-point-scaling end	x.x	FLOAT32	rw				

Further details can be found in the section Analog output, see 6.7, see A 7.5.4.

## Analog output:

- 4 No analog output (inactive)
- 0 Voltage 0 ... 5 V
- 1 Voltage 0 ... 10 V
- 2 Voltage -5 ... 5 V
- 3 Voltage -10 ... 10 V
- 7 Current 4 ... 20 mA

Analog output signal: Data selection only possible according to the selected measurement program - Only Distance 1 in case of displacement measurement

- 0 Distance 1
- 1 Distance 2
- 2 Distance 3
- 3 Distance 4
- 4 Distance 5
- 5 Distance 6
- 32 Difference 1-2
- 33 Difference 1-3
- 34 Difference 1-4
- 35 Difference 1-5
- 36 Difference 1-6
- 37 Difference 2-3
- 38 Difference 2-4
- 39 Difference 2-5
- 40 Difference 2-6
- 41 Difference 3-4
- 42 Difference 3-5
- 43 Difference 3-6
- 44 Difference 4-5
- 45 Difference 4-6
- 56 Difference 5-6

## Analog output type of scaling:

- 0 Standard Scaling
- 1 Two-point scaling

### **Object 21E0h: Zeroing/Mastering**

21E0	RECORD	Zeroing/Mastering			ro				
Subindice	Subindices								
0	VAR	Number of entries	5	Unsigned8	ro				
2	VAR	Master value	x.xx	FLOAT32	rw				
3	VAR	Zeroing/Mastering active	FALSE	BOOL	rw				
4	VAR	Zeroing/Mastering	FALSE	BOOL	rw				
5	VAR	Reset master value	FALSE	BOOL	rw				
6	VAR	Master signal	x	Unsigned8	rw				

Further details can be found in the section Zeroing/Mastering, see 6.4 and Setting masters and zero, see A 7.4.5.7.

#### Master value:

-2\*Sensor-measuring range ... 2\*Sensor-measuring range (in mm)

### Zeroing/Mastering active:

- 0 Measured value not zeroed/ mastered
- 1 Measured value moved by zeroing/ mastering

Master signal: Measurement value, which is mastered (only in measurement program multilayer).

- 0 Distance 1
- 1 Distance 2
- 2 Distance 3
- 3 Distance 4
- 4 Distance 5
- 5 Distance 6
- 32 Difference 1-2
- 33 Difference 1-3
- 34 Difference 1-4
- 35 Difference 1-5
- 36 Difference 1-6
- 37 Difference 2-3
- 38 Difference 2-4
- 39 Difference 2-5
- 40 Difference 2-6
- 41 Difference 3-4
- 42 Difference 3-5
- 43 Difference 3-6
- 44 Difference 4-5
- 45 Difference 4-6
- 56 Difference 5-6

21F1	RECORD	Switching outputs			ro
Subindic	es				
0	VAR	Number of entries	6	Unsigned8	ro
1	VAR	Switching output error 1	x	Unsigned8	rw
2	VAR	Switching output error 2	x	Unsigned8	rw
3	VAR	Lower limit value (mm)	X.XX	FLOAT32	rw
4	VAR	Upper limit value (mm)	x.xx	FLOAT32	rw
5	VAR	Signal for limit value output	x	Unsigned8	rw
6	VAR	Level of switching outputs	x	Unsigned8	rw

#### **Object 21F1h: Switching outputs**

Further details can be found in the section Switching outputs, see 6.6, see A 7.5.3.

Switching output error 1 and 2: Assignment of both switching outputs

- 0 No output
- 1 Intensity error
- 2 Measured value out of range
- 3 Intensity error or measured value out of range
- 4 Deceed the lower limit
- 5 Exceed the upper limit
- 6 Deceed the lower limit or exceed the upper limit

Lower and upper limit value:

-120.000000 ... 120.000000 (in mm)

Signal for limit value output: The limits refer to

- 0 Distance 1
- 1 Distance 2
- 2 Distance 3
- 3 Distance 4
- 4 Distance 5
- 5 Distance 6
- 32 Difference 1-2
- 33 Difference 1-3
- 34 Difference 1-4
- 35 Difference 1-5
- 36 Difference 1-6
- 37 Difference 2-3
- 38 Difference 2-4
- 39 Difference 2-5
- 40 Difference 2-6
- 41 Difference 3-4
- 42 Difference 3-5
- 43 Difference 3-6
- 44 Difference 4-5
- 45 Difference 4-6
- 56 Difference 5-6

(Data selection only possible according to the selected measurement program: at displacement measurement only distance 1)

Level of switching outputs:

- 0 High upon error
- 1 Low upon error

Object 22	250h: Expo	sure	e mode/Measuring rate
0050	DECODD	01	

2250	RECORD	Shutter mode/measuring rate						
Subindic	Subindices							
0	VAR	Number of entries	4	Unsigned8	ro			
1	VAR	Shutter mode	x	Unsigned8	rw			
2	VAR	Measuring rate	x	Unsigned8	rw			
3	VAR	Shutter time 1	X.XX	FLOAT32	rw			
4	VAR	Shutter time 2	X.XX	FLOAT32	rw			
5	VAR	Manual measuring rate	x.xx	FLOAT32	rw			

Further details can be found in the section Exposure mode / Measuring rate, see 5.3.5), Exposure mode, see A 7.4.1.2, Measuring rate, see A 7.4.1.4 and Exposure time, see A 7.4.1.5.

Shutter mode:

- 0 Automatic mode
- 1 Measurement mode
- 2 Manual mode
- 3 Two-time mode alternating
- 4 Two-time mode automatically

#### Measuring rate:

Setting value	IFC2451	IFC2461	IFC2471LED	IFC2471		
0	-		70 kHz	70 kHz		
1	-		50 kHz	50 kHz		
2	-	25 kHz	25 kHz	25 kHz		
3	10 kHz	10 kHz	10 kHz	10 kHz		
4	5 kHz	5 kHz	5 kHz	5 kHz		
5	2.5 kHz	2.5 kHz	2.5 kHz	2.5 kHz		
6	1 kHz	1 kHz	1 kHz	1 kHz		
7	0.3 kHz	0.3 kHz	-	0.3 kHz		
8	0.2 kHz	0.2 kHz	-	-		
9	0.1 kHz	0.1 kHz	0.1 kHz	-		
10	Choice from subindice 5					

### **Objekt 2410h: Triggermodes**

2410	RECORD	Trigger mode			ro			
Subindice	Subindices							
0	VAR	Number of entries	9	Unsigned8	ro			
1	VAR	Trigger mode	0	Unsigned8	rw			
2	VAR	Trigger edge/level	0	Unsigned8	rw			
3	VAR	Number of values per trigger pulse	1	Unsigned16	rw			
4	VAR	Number of input for encoder trigger	0	Unsigned8	rw			
5	VAR	Step width for encoder trigger	1	Unsigned8	rw			
6	VAR	Minimum value for encoder trigger	0	Unsigned8	rw			
7	VAR	Maximum value for encoder trigger	0xffffffff	Unsigned8	rw			
8	VAR	Software trigger pulse	FALSE	BOOL	rw			
9	VAR	Trigger In/Out	FALSE	BOOL	rw			

Further details can be found in the section Triggering, see 6.10 and Triggermodes, see A 7.3.4.

Trigger mode:

- 0 No triggering
- 1 Level triggering
- 2 Edge triggering
- 3 Software triggering
- 4 Encoder triggering

Trigger edge/level:

- 0 At edge triggering: Falling edge; at level triggering: Low
- 1 At edge triggering: Rising edge; at level triggering: High

Number of value per trigger pulse: Number of output data after a trigger pulse for edge or software triggering, 0...16382, 16383 = infinite, 0 = Stop

Number of input for encoder trigger:

- 0 Encoder 1 for the encoder triggering
- 1 Encoder 2 for the encoder triggering
- 2 Encoder 3 for the encoder triggering

Step width for encoder trigger:

Number of encoder steps by which a measured value has ever been output  $(1...2^{31}-1)$ . 0 = all measured values (continuously, regardless of the encoder)

Minimum and Maximum value for encoder trigger:  $0...2^{32}$ -1

Trigger In/Out:

- 0 Triggering the measured value recording
- 0 Triggering the measurement value output

## Object 2550h: Peak detection threshold

object zoodi. I cak account an conora								
2550 VAR	Threshold	1.0	FLOAT32	rw				

Further details can be found in the section Detection threshold, see 6.2, and Peak detection threshold, see A 7.4.2.3.

#### **Object 25A0h: Encoder**

25A0	RECORD	Encoder			ro
Subindic	es				
0	VAR	Number of entries	15	Unsigned8	ro
1	VAR	Encoder 1 reference signal	x	Unsigned32	rw
2	VAR	Encoder 1 interpolation	x	Unsigned32	rw
3	VAR	Encoder 1 initial value	x	Unsigned32	rw
4	VAR	Encoder 1 maximal value	x	Unsigned32	rw
5	VAR	Encoder 1 set value	FALSE	BOOL	rw
6	VAR	Encoder 2 reference signal	x	Unsigned32	rw
7	VAR	Encoder 2 interpolation	x	Unsigned32	rw
8	VAR	Encoder 2 initial value	x	Unsigned32	rw
9	VAR	Encoder 2 maximal value	x	Unsigned32	rw
10	VAR	Encoder 2 set value	FALSE	BOOL	rw
11	VAR	Encoder 3 reference signal	x	Unsigned32	rw
12	VAR	Encoder 3 interpolation	x	Unsigned32	rw
13	VAR	Encoder 3 initial value	х	Unsigned32	rw
14	VAR	Encoder 3 maximal value	x	Unsigned32	rw
15	VAR	Encoder 3 set value	FALSE	BOOL	rw

Further details can be found in the section Encoder inputs, see 6.9 and Encoder, see A 7.3.5.

Encoder reference signal:

- 0 Reference marker position of encoder without effect
- 1 Unique setting
- 3 Setting at all marker positions

Encoder interpolation:

- 1 Unique interpolation
- 2 Double interpolation
- 3 Quad interpolation

Encoder initial value:

0 ... 2<sup>32</sup>-1

Encoder maximal value:

0 ... 2<sup>32</sup>-1

### **Object 2711h: Reduction of region of interest**

2711	RECORD	Range of interest					
Subindices							
0	VAR	Number of entries	2	Unsigned8	ro		
1	VAR	Range of interest start	x	Unsigned32	rw		
2	VAR	Range of interest end	x	Unsigned32	rw		

Further details can be found in the section Reduction of region of interest, see 6.14, see A 7.4.2.1.

#### **Object 2800h: Material info**

2800	RECORD	Material info						
Subindic	Subindices							
0	VAR	Number of entries	3	Unsigned8	ro			
1	VAR	Material name	XXXXX	Visible String	rw			
2	VAR	Material description	XXXXXX	Visible String	rw			
3	VAR	Type of refraction numbers	xx	Uint8	rw			
4	VAR	nd	x.xxxx	FLOAT32	rw			
5	VAR	nF	x.xxxx	FLOAT32	rw			
6	VAR	nC	x.xxxx	FLOAT32	rw			
7	VAR	Abbe number	x.xxxx	FLOAT32	rw			

Further details can be found in the section Material data base, see 5.3.3, see A 7.4.3.

Material name: Actual selected material for a thickness measurement

Material description: Description of actual selected material

nd, nF and nC: Refractive numbers of the actual selected material at 587 nm, 486 nm and 656 nm.

Abbe number: Abbe number of actual selected material

Here the current material can also be edited in professional mode. Any custom settings will be saved immediately.

#### **Object 2801h: Material select**

2801	RECORD	Material selection				
Subindices						
0	0 VAR Number of entries		9	Unsigned8	ro	
1	VAR	Material names	"XX" "XX"	Visible String	ro	
2	VAR	Material 1	xx	Visible String	rw	
3	VAR	Material 2	xx	Visible String	rw	
4	VAR	Material 3	XX	Visible String	rw	
5	VAR	Material 4	xx	Visible String	rw	
6	VAR	Material 5	XX	Visible String	rw	
8	VAR	Selected material	xx	Visible String	rw	

Material names: Output of all names of materials contained in the material table

#### Material 1 to 5:

Specification of material between the Distance 1 - 2, 2 - 3, 3 - 4, 4 - 5 and 5 - 6. The selected material must be present in the material table.

#### Selected material:

Selection of material from the material table, which is displayed and edited in the object "Material info".

### Object 2802h: Material table edit

2802	RECORD	Material table edit	laterial table edit					
Subindices								
0	VAR	Number of entries	3	Unsigned8	ro			
1	VAR	Material delete	x	Visible String	rw			
2	VAR	Reset materials	x	BOOL	rw			
3	VAR	New material	x	BOOL	rw			

Material delete: Specification of name to be deleted from the material table

Reset Materials: Resetting the material table to factory settings

New material: Creating a new material in the material table. Then the newly created material ("NewMaterial") is to be edit in object 2800h "Material info".

#### **Object 6010h: Videosignal**

6010	RECORD	Video signal			ro
Subindice	es				
0	VAR	Number of entries	1	Unsigned8	ro
1	VAR	Video signal	xxh xxh xxh xxh xxh	Octed String	

The dark corrected video signal is transmit.

#### **Object 603Fh: Sensor error**

603F	RECORD	Sensor error			
Subindic	es				
0	VAR	Number of entries	2	Unsigned8	ro

0	VAR	Number of entries	2	Unsigned8	ro
1	VAR	Sensor error number	х	Unsigned16	ro
2	VAR	Sensor error descrip- tion	x	Visible String	ro

Further details can be found in the section Error messages, see A 7.8.

Sensor error number: Output of sensor error in communication

Sensor error description: Sensor error as plain text

#### **Object 6065h: Measurement values**

6065	RECORD	Measuring values	leasuring values			
Subindices						
0	VAR	Number of entries	43	Unsigned8	ro	
1	VAR	Distance 1 Ethernet/ EtherCAT	x	Signed32	ro	

All in the object 21B0h Digital interfaces selected measurement values.

## A 8.3 Error Codes for SDO Services

In case of a negative evaluation of a SDO requirement, a corresponding error code is output in "Abort SDO Transfer Protocol".

Error code hexadecimal	Meaning
0503 0000	Toggle-Bit has not changed.
0504 0000	SDO protocol timeout expired
0504 0001	Invalid command registered
0504 0005	Not enough memory
0601 0000	Access to object (parameter) not supported.
0601 0001	Attempt to write to a "read-only parameter"
0601 0002	Attempt to write to a "read-only parameter"
0602 0000	Object (parameter) is not listed in the object directory.
0604 0041	Object (parameter) is not mapped on PDO
0604 0042	Number or length of objects to be transmitted exceeds PDO length.
0604 0043	General parameters incompatibility
0604 0047	General internal device incompatibility
0606 0000	Excess denied because of a hardware error
0607 0010	False data type or length of service parameter is incorrect.
0607 0012	False data type or length of service parameter is too large.
0607 0013	False data type or length of service parameter is too small.
0609 0011	Subindex does not exist
0609 0030	Invalid value of parameter (only for write access)
0609 0031	Value of the parameter too large
0609 0032	Value of the parameter too small
0609 0036	Maximum value deceeds minimum value.
0800 0000	General error
0800 0020	Data can not be transmitted or saved in application.
0800 0021	Data can not be transmitted or saved in application, because of local control.
0800 0022	Data can not be transmitted or saved in application, because device state.
0800 0023	Dynamic generation of object directory failed or no object directory is available

## A 8.4 Measurement Data Formats

## A 8.4.1 Measured Values

- Exposure time (1 \* 32 bit)
- Encoder (Ne \* 32 bit) (Ne = {0, 1, 2, 3})
- Measured value counter (1 \* 32 bit)
- Time stamp (1 \* 32 bit)
- Displacement values / Intensities / Unlinearized distances (n \* (i+j+1) \* 32 bit)
- Error field (1 \* 32 bit)
- Differences ((n-1) \* 32 bit)
- Statistic values (Min/Max/Peak2Peak) (each 32 bit)

 n = {1 - 6} n = 1 -> Displacement measurement, n = 2 -> Thickness measurement, n = 2 - 6 -> Multilayer measurement
 i = 0 -> Intensity output off, j = {0, 1} j = 0 -> Unlinearized distances off j = 1 -> Unlinearized distances

activated Further details to the setup of measured values can be found in Measured value format,

## A 8.4.2 Video Signal

see A 7.6.

## A 8.4.2.1 Video Signal Output via Service Data Object

Only the dark corrected video signal can be transmitted. The video signal can be read using the SDO Object 0x6010.1.

For this purpose the confocalDT 24x1 is to bring first in the preoperational mode.

Then the measurement program is to set on video signal output using the object 0x2154 (Measuring program).

By SDO reading (Request-Response) of the object 0x6010.1 exactly one video signal with the related (in object 0x21B0.0x04 - 0x20 selected) measured values is stored in the memory of confocalDT 24x1 and the video signal is output. As long as no requirement for a new video signal is made, the measured values remain unchanged in the memory and can in turn be read by SDO reading. This ensures, that the measured values are part of the video signal.

The video signal is read "segmented", because the mailbox is smaller than the video signal.

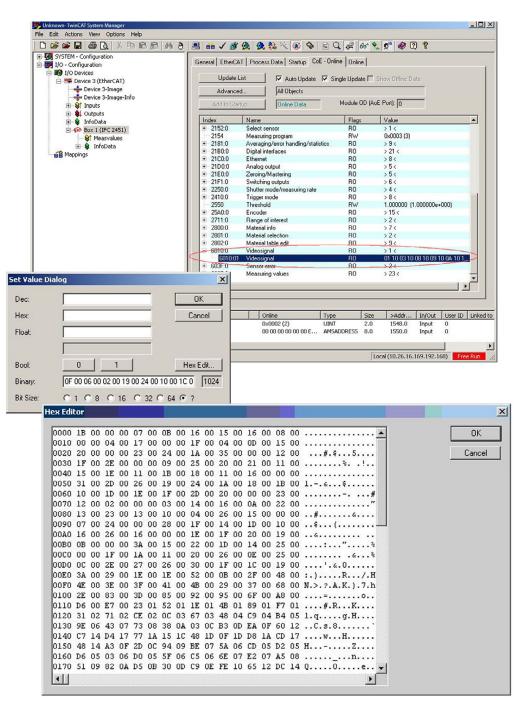
There are 5 request-response necessary for a video signal.

### Segment from Wireshark:

)x6010 Sub=0)
-
)x6010 Sub=1)
· · · ·
)x6010 sub=1)
2 Commont
2. Segment
1 1
<b></b>
3. Segment
of eaginering
4. Segment
1
5. Segment
)x6068 sub=0)
x6065 Sub=0)
)x100a Sub=0)
)x100a Sub=0)
)x1018 Sub=0)

A video signal consists of 512 pixels each with two bytes. The low byte is transmitted first, followed by the high byte.

In TwinCAT the video signal can unfortunately only be displayed as hex dump. Double clicking on the index Getvideo (0x6010.1) opens the Set Value dialog. Hex Edit... opens the hex dump of video signal.



#### A 8.4.2.2 Video Signal Output via Process Data

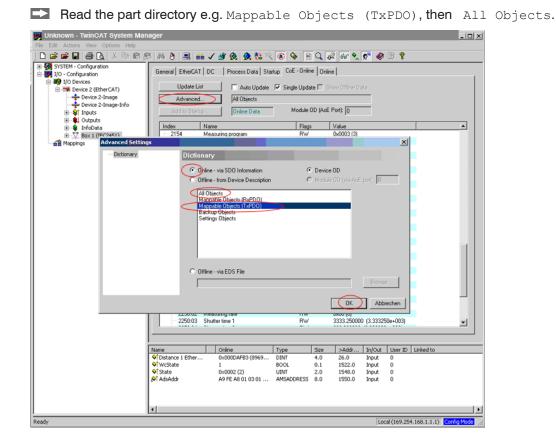
For adding the video signal to the process data, proceed as follows:

- Bring the IFC24x1 in the preoperational mode.
- Set the measurement program on video signal output (3) using the object 0x2154 (Measuring program).
- Set the shutter mode (Object 0x2250.1) on 1 (Measmode) and the object 0x21B0.25 on TRUE.

A reduction of video signal can be adjusted in object 0x2181, see A 8.2.2, object description 0x2181.

🕏 🚅 🔜 🦀 💽 🕺 🐘 🛍 📠 🎂 SYSTEM - Configuration		🚴 👧 🗞 🔨 💽 💊 🖹 🔍	- 0 - 1		
I/O - Configuration	General   EtherLA	I DL Process Data   Stanup Coe	· online []	Unime	
I/O Devices I/O Device 2 (EtherCAT)	Update L	ist 🛛 🔽 Auto Update 🖓 Sing	e Update F	Show Office Data	
Device 2 (EtherCAT)					
Device 2-Image Info	Advanced				
	Add to Start	up Online Data	fodule OD (	AoE Port): 0	
🖲 🌒 Outputs		Name	Floor	Value	
🗈 😫 InfoData	Index 2154	Measuring program	RW.	0x0003 (3)	
	- 2181:0	Averaging/enor handling/statistics	nw	> 15 <	
📸 Mappings	- 2181:01	Measured value averaging type	BW	0x00000000 (0)	
	2181:02	Number of values for moving average	BW	0x0000002 (2)	
	- 2181:03	Number of values for median	RW	0x0000003 (3)	
	2181:04	Number of values for recursive average	RW/	0x0000002 (2)	
	- 2181:05	Statistic depth	RW/	0x0004 (4)	
	- 2181:06		RW	FALSE	
	- 2181:07	Error handling	RW	0	
	- 2181:08		RW	0x0000 (0)	
	- 2181:09		RW	0,00 (0)	
	2181:08	Reduce videosignal	RO	0x00 (0)	
	- 2180.01	Digital interfaces Output device	BW	0x05 (5)	
	2180:02		BW	0x001C200 (115200)	
	2180:03		BW	TRUE	
	2180:04		RO	TRUE	
	21B0.05		RO	FALSE	
	- 21B0:0A	Intensity Ethernet/EtherCAT	RW/	FALSE	
	21B0:08		RW	FALSE	
	- 21B0:0C		RW	FALSE	
		Encoder 3 Ethernet/EtherCAT	RW	FALSE	
	- 21B0:0E		RW	FALSE	
	21B0:0F	Statistic minimum value Ethernet/Ethe	RW	FALSE	
	2180:10		RW	FALSE	
	2180:12		RW	FALSE	
	2180.12		RW	FALSE	
		Sensor state Ethernet/EtherCAT	RW	FALSE	
		Difference 1-2 Ethernet/EtherCAT	RO	FALSE	
		None in Ethemet/EtherCAT	RW	FALSE	
	21B0:25	Video as PD0	RO	TRUE	
	· 21C0.0	Ethemet	RO	→ 8 <	
	+ 21D0:0	Analog output	RO	> 5 <	
		Zeroing/Mastering	RO	> 6 <	
	<ul> <li>21F1:0</li> </ul>	Switching outputs	RO	>6<	
	E-2250:0	Shutter mode/measuring rate	RO	>4<	
	2250:01	Shutter mode Measuring rate	RW	0x01 (1)	
	2250.02	Shutter time 1	RW	3333.250000 (3.333250e+003)	
	2250.03	Shutter time 1 Shutter time 2	RW	200.000000 (2.000000e+002)	
	+ 2410:0	Trigger mode	RO	> 9 <	
	2550	Threshold	RW	1.000000 (1.000000e+000)	

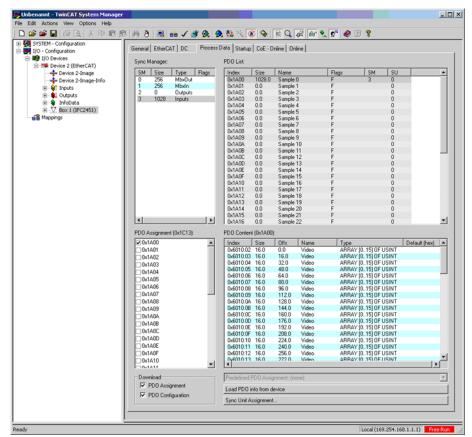
Because the object list changes, import it completely new as follows:



Unbenannt - TwinCAT System Manage	r -					
e Edit Actions View Options Help 🗅 🗃 💕 🖬 🎒 🏠 📐 🖇 🛤	8 4 8 8 4 4 4	<u>&amp; @ *:</u> < @ 4	• ■ Q # 67 •	🛋 🔉 🗐 🧕		
- 🚱 SYSTEM - Configuration			0 - 1 - 0 - 1 -	x & 9 8		
J/O - Configuration	General EtherCAT DC P	rocess Data Startup CoE	- Online   Online			
I/O Devices	Sync Manager:	PD0 List:				
E Device 2 (EtherCAT)			Name		SM	
Device 2-Image	SM Size Type Fit 0 256 MbxOut	ags Index Size 0x1A00 68.0		Flags	3	SU
Corputs     C	1 256 Mbs/n 2 0 Dulputs 3 68 Inputs					
	I I					
	PDO Assignment (0x1C13):	PDO Content (0x1/	.00):			
	▼ 0x1A00	Index Size	Offs Name		Type	-
		0x6065:01 4.0		ethernet/ECAT	UDINT	
		0x6065:02 4.0		ethernet/ECAT	UDINT	
		0x6065:03 4.0		ethernet/ECAT	UDINT	
		0x6065:04 4.0		ethernet/ECAT	UDINT	_
		0x6065:05 4.0	16.0 Value_coun	ter_ethemet/ECAT	UDINT	
		0x6065:06 4.0	20.0 Time_stamp	ethernet/ECAT	UDINT	_
		0x6065:06 4.0 0x6065:07 4.0	20.0 Time_stamp 24.0 None_linear	_ethemet/ECAT zed_1_ethemet/ECAT	UDINT	
		0x6065:06 4.0 0x6065:07 4.0 0x6065:08 4.0	20.0 Time_stamp 24.0 None_linear 28.0 Intensity_1_	_ethemet/ECAT ized_1_ethemet/ECAT ethemet/ECAT	UDINT UDINT UDINT	
		0x6065:06 4.0 0x6065:07 4.0 0x6065:08 4.0 0x6065:09 4.0	20.0 Time_stamp 24.0 None_linear 28.0 Intensity_1_ 32.0 Distance_1	_ethemet/ECAT ized_1_ethemet/ECAT ethemet/ECAT _ethemet/ECAT	UDINT UDINT UDINT DINT	
		0x6065:06 4.0 0x6065:07 4.0 0x6065:08 4.0	20.0 Time_stamp 24.0 None_linear 28.0 Intensity_1_ 32.0 Distance_1 36.0 None_linear	_ethemet/ECAT ized_1_ethemet/ECAT ethemet/ECAT	UDINT UDINT UDINT	
	Download	0x6065:06 4.0 0x6065:07 4.0 0x6065:08 4.0 0x6065:09 4.0 0x6065:04 4.0	20.0 Time_stamp 24.0 None_linear 28.0 Intensity_1 32.0 Distance_1 36.0 None_linear 40.0 Intensity 2	_ethernet/ECAT zed_1_ethernet/ECAT ethernet/ECAT _ethernet/ECAT zed_2_ethernet/ECAT	UDINT UDINT UDINT DINT UDINT	× *
	PD0 Assignment	0x6065:06 4.0 0x6065:07 4.0 0x6065:08 4.0 0x6065:09 4.0 0x6065:0A 4.0 0x6065:0A 4.0	20.0         Time_stamp           24.0         None_inear           28.0         Intensity_1_           32.0         Distance_1,           36.0         None_inear           40.0         Intensity 2	_ethernet/ECAT zed_1_ethernet/ECAT ethernet/ECAT _ethernet/ECAT zed_2_ethernet/ECAT	UDINT UDINT UDINT DINT UDINT	_
		0x6065:06 4.0 0x6055:07 4.0 0x6065:08 4.0 0x6065:08 4.0 0x6065:08 4.0 0x6065:08 4.0 • Predefined PDD A	20.0 Time_stamp 24.0 None_linear 28.0 Interesty_1 32.0 Distance_1 36.0 None_linear 40.0 Intensity 2 ssignment (none) n device	_ethernet/ECAT zed_1_ethernet/ECAT ethernet/ECAT _ethernet/ECAT zed_2_ethernet/ECAT	UDINT UDINT UDINT DINT UDINT	_
	PD0 Assignment	0x6055.05 4.0 0x6055.07 4.0 0x6055.08 4.0 0x6055.08 4.0 0x6055.04 4.0 0x6055.04 4.0 € Predefined PD0 A Load PD0 info fro	20.0 Time_stamp 24.0 None_linear 28.0 Interesty_1 32.0 Distance_1 36.0 None_linear 40.0 Intensity 2 ssignment (none) n device	_ethernet/ECAT zed_1_ethernet/ECAT ethernet/ECAT _ethernet/ECAT zed_2_ethernet/ECAT	UDINT UDINT UDINT DINT UDINT	_
	PDD Assignment	De005:06 4:0 De005:07 4:0 De005:09 4:0 De005:09 4:0 De005:08 4:0 DE005	200         Time_trans           240         None_times           280         Intensity_1           380         Intensity_1           380         None_times           adult         Intensity_1           380         Intensity_2           adult         Intensity 2           adult         Intensity 2           adult         Intensity 2           adult         Intensity 2	eihenev/ECAT eed_1_ethemet/ECAT ethernet/ECAT eihenev/ECAT zed_2_ethernet/ECAT ethernet/ECAT		<u> </u>
	PDD Assignment PDD Configuration	De605:06         4.0           De605:07         4.0           De605:09         4.0           De605:09         4.0           De605:04         4.0           De605:04         4.0           Ve605:06         4.0           Prederind PD0 and Into Into         Sync Unit Assignment           Online         Online	200         Time_strang           240         None_ineat           280         Intensity_1           350         None_ineat           400         Intensity_2           signment: (none)         Intensity_2           ent         Type	eihenev/ECAT ed. 1_ethemet/ECAT ethemet/ECAT ethemet/ECAT zed.2_ethemet/ECAT ethemet/ECAT	UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT	<u> </u>
	PDD Assignment PDD Configuration	Dx6065/06         4.0           Dx6065/07         4.0           Dx6065/08         4.0           Dx6065/08         4.0           Dx6065/08         4.0           Dx6065/08         4.0           Dx6065/08         4.0           Dx6065/08         4.0           Load PDD into into Syme Unit Assignme           Online         0.00000000 (0)	200         Time_trans           240         None_times           280         Intensity_1           350         Distance_t           360         Intensity_1           360         None_times           signment: [none]         ent           Type         Size           UDINT         4.0	eihenev/ECAT ed.]_eihenev/ECAT eihenev/ECAT eihenev/ECAT zedeihenev/ECAT eihenev/ECAT	UDINT UDINT DINT UDINT UDINT UDINT	<u> </u>
	PDD Assignment     PD0 Configuration     PD0 Configuration     Shutter_bime_ethernet/ECAT     if Encoder_l_ethernet/ECAT	De6065/06 4/0     De6065/07 4/0     De6065/09 4/0     De6065/09 4/0     De6065/09 4/0     De6065/04 4/0     De6065/	200         Time_strem           240         None_ineat           280         Intensity_1           320         Distance_1           320         Intensity_1           380         None_ineat           400         Intensity_2           ent         Intensity_2           Type         Size           UDINT         4.0	eihenevt/ECAT esd_t_ethemet/ECAT ethemet/ECAT ethemet/ECAT ethemet/ECAT ethemet/ECAT ethemet/ECAT ethemet/ECAT	UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT	<u> </u>
	PD0 Assignment     PD0 Configuration     PD0 Configuration     Shutter_bime_ethernet/ECAT     Encoder_l_ethernet/ECAT     Encoder_c_ethernet/ECAT	De6065/06         4.0           De6065/07         4.0           De6065/08         4.0           Experiment PDD A         Experiment PDD A           De6065/08         0.0           Contine         0.00000000 (0)           0.00000000 (0)         0.00000000 (0)	200         Time_trans           240         None_times           320         Distance_t           330         Intensity_1           360         None_times           ent         signment: (none)           m device         ent           Type         Size           UDINT         4.0           UDINT         4.0	eihenevk/EGAT eed_1_ethemet/ECAT ethernet/ECAT	UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT	<u> </u>
	PDD Assignment     PD0 Configuration     PD0 Configuration     Shutter_bime_ethernet/ECAT     if Encoder_l_ethernet/ECAT	De6065/06 4/0     De6065/07 4/0     De6065/09 4/0     De6065/09 4/0     De6065/09 4/0     De6065/04 4/0     De6065/	200         Time_strem           240         None_ineat           280         Intensity_1           320         Distance_1           320         Intensity_1           380         None_ineat           400         Intensity_2           ent         Intensity_2           Type         Size           UDINT         4.0	eihenevt/ECAT esd_t_ethemet/ECAT ethemet/ECAT ethemet/ECAT ethemet/ECAT ethemet/ECAT ethemet/ECAT ethemet/ECAT	UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT	<u> </u>

Now you can read the PDO allocations on the Process Data side from the device.

#### After the reading:



The configuration is complete after Reload Devices.

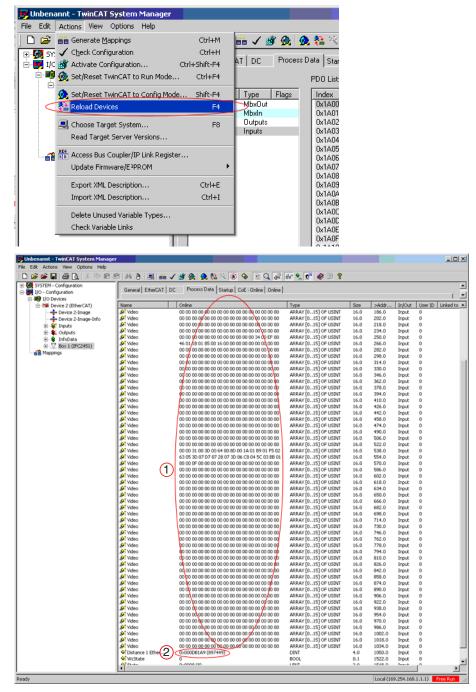


Fig. 89 Video signal and a measured value as process data

- 1 Video signal
- 2 Measured value

## A 8.5 Distributed Clock

## A 8.5.1 Introduction

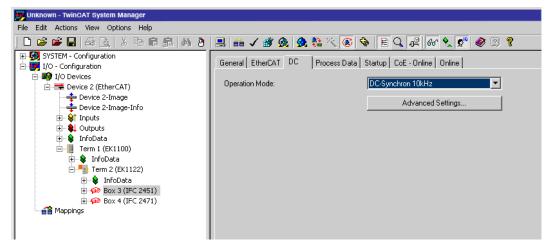
The synchronization of IFC24x1 among each other in the EtherCAT is realized via the Distributed Clock. With it it is not necessary or possible to transmit the synchronous signals via the synchronous input or output of the controller.

Unlike the Ethernet the synchronization does not occur via external signals but about the clocks in the controllers. Using the EtherCAT this results in the synchronous modes <code>Synchronization out (= Free Run)</code> and <code>Slave</code>.

The minimum cycle time for distributed clock is 100  $\mu$ s for the IFC2451, 40  $\mu$ s for the IFC2461 and 14.3  $\mu$ s for the IFC2471.

## A 8.5.2 Synchronization

IFC24x1, that support the synchronization in the EtherCAT mode, offer the additional tab DC in the TwinCat-Manager. In addition to the FreeRun mode (not synchronized), the controller can be operated synchronously with different frequencies.



## A 8.5.3 Synchronization off

In the FreeRun mode no synchronization of controllers occurs.

## A 8.5.4 Slave

In the  ${\tt DC\_Synchron}~{\tt xxxkHz}$  mode the controller is switched in the synchronization mode Slave.

Besides  $_{\rm XXX}$  means the measuring rate. The controller measures with the rate selected by  $_{\rm XXX}$ 

## A 8.5.5 Apply Selected Settings

Once the required synchronization mode is selected using the drop-down-menu, it is applied with F4.

## A 8.5.6 Setting Regardless of TwinCat

The setting of the synchronisation mode in EtherCAT occurs via the setting of the registers for the Distributed Clocks. You will find details under www.beckhoff.de or www.ethercat. org.

For reading the settings in the TwinCAT it is possible to display the requirements of the XML file using the button <code>Advanced Settings</code>.

## A 8.6 Oversampling

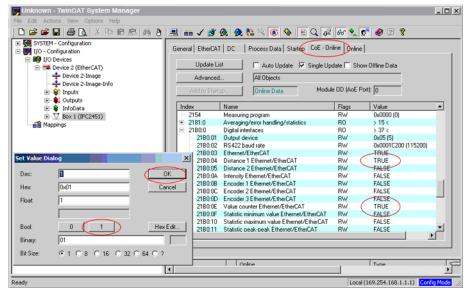
The last arised measurement value data record is transmitted to EtherCAT Master with each fieldbus cycle during operation without oversampling. Many measurement value data records are not available therefore for large fieldbus cycle times. All (or selectable) measurement value data records are collected with the configurable oversampling and are transmitted together to the master with the next fieldbus cycle.

#### Example:

The fieldbus/EtherCAT is operated with a cycle time of 1 ms, because, for example the PLC is operated with 1 ms cycle time. For this reason an EtherCAT frame is sent to the IFC24x1 for collection of process data every 1 ms. If the measuring rate in IFC24x1 is set to 10 kHz, an oversampling of 10 should be set.

## Procedure:

- Select the measuring data to be set in the object 0x21B0 (Digital interfaces) in preoparational state, for example
  - "Distance 1 Ethernet/EtherCAT" (is always selected and not deselected)
  - "Value counter Ethernet/EtherCAT"



Then read the object directory from the IFC24x1.

Select another input as All Objects (e.g. Mappable Objects (TxPDO)) in the Advanced Settings dialog and then select All Objects.

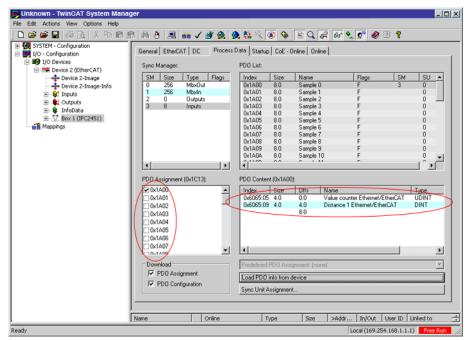
Otherwise, it may be, that TwinCAT only reads the values of the objects already known to it. This is important for the next steps, because the Mapping (objects 0x1A00, 0x1A01, ... and 0x1C13) has changed.

Unknown - TwinCAT System Manager				_ [ ] ×
File Edit Actions View Options Help				
] D 🛎 📽 🖬 🎒 💁 🕼 🖇 🖻 📾 🖓	프 🖬 🗸 🎯 👧 👧 🎨 🌂 🖹 🤇	2 🖓 🚳 🍡 9	🔊 🔗 🕐 🦉	
Image: SYSTEM - Configuration       I/O - Configuration       Image: System - Configuration       Image: S	General EtherCAT DC Process Data Startur C Update List IF Auto Update IF Si Advanced. All Objects Add to Startup. Online Data		w Offine Data	
Outputs	Index Name	Flags	Value	-
InfoData	21B0.01 Output device	BW	0x05 (5)	
Box 1 (IFC2451)	2180:02 RS422 baud rate	BW	0x0001C200 (115200)	
			TRUE	
Advanced Settings		жV	TRUE	
-Dictionary Dictionary		V	FALSE	
Dictionary		V	FALSE	
Online - via SDD Info	mation	V	FALSE	
		V	FALSE	
O Ulfline - from Device	Description C Module OD (via AoE port)	V	FALSE	
ALONIA		M	TRUE	
All Objects Mappable Objects (F	-900)	V	FALSE	
Mappable Objects (	TyPDO)	V	FALSE	
Backup Objects		V	FALSE	
Settings Objects		V	FALSE	
		þ	> 8 <	
C Offline - via EDS File			1.67	- Č
O Umine - Via EDS File				
	Brow	/se		
	ОК АЬ	obrechen		<u> </u>

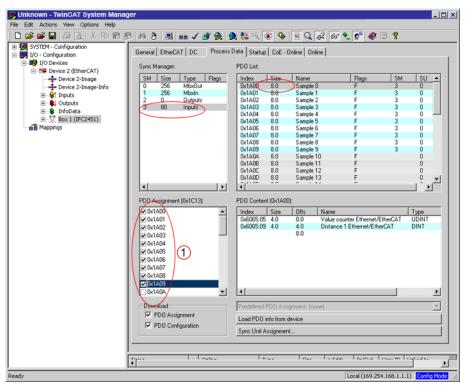
ile Edit Actions View Options Help					
🗅 🚅 📽 🔛 🍜 💽 . 🖓 🔂 .	🗟 🏘 ð 🔜 💼 🗸 🏄	। 🐼 😵 🛠 💽 🗞	• 🖹 🔍 🖧 🚳 🌖	🙎 🧶 🧝	
Generation     SYSTEM - Configuration     I/O - Configuration	General EtherCAT DC	Process Data Startup CoE	Online Online		
E-B I/O Devices	Sync Manager:	PDO List:			
A Device 2 (Ener.CA1)     Device 2-Image     D	SM         Size         Type         I           0         256         Mbx0ut         1         256         Mbx0ut           1         256         Mbx0ut         1         256         Mbx0ut         1	Flag: Index Size 0x1A00 68.0	Name Measuring_values	Flags SM	SU O
	PDD Assignment (0x1C13):	PD0 Content (0x1A/			
	¥ 0x1A00	Index Size 0x6065:01 4.0	0ffs Name 0.0 Shutter tim	e_ethernet/ECAT	UDINT
	¥ UKIAUU		0.0         Shutter_tim           4.0         Encoder_1           8.0         Encoder_2           12.0         Encoder_3           16.0         Value_cour           20.0         Time_stamp	e_ethernet/ECAT _ethernet/ECAT _ethernet/ECAT _ethernet/ECAT riter_ethernet/ECAT _ethernet/ECAT _ized_1_ethernet/ECAT	
	Download PD0 Astignment PD0 Configuration	0x6065:01 4.0 0x6065:02 4.0 0x6065:03 4.0 0x6065:04 4.0 0x6065:05 4.0 0x6065:06 4.0 0x6065:07 4.0	0.0 Shutter_tim 4.0 Encoder_1 8.0 Encoder_2 12.0 Encoder_3 16.0 Value_cour 20.0 Time_stam 24.0 None_inea	ethernet/ECAT ethernet/ECAT ethernet/ECAT nter_ethernet/ECAT	

Read the PDO info on the process data tab from the IFC24x1.

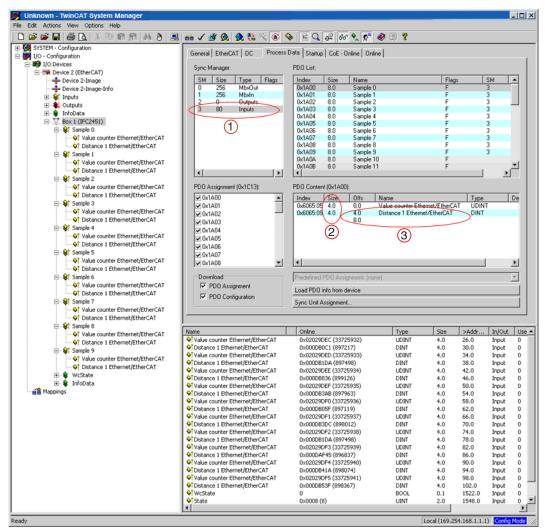
You can now view the size of the provided data and the mapping of SyncManager at delivery.



To set the oversampling (in example 10), 10 measurement data sets (samples) (1) are selected in the PDO mapping (0x1C13).



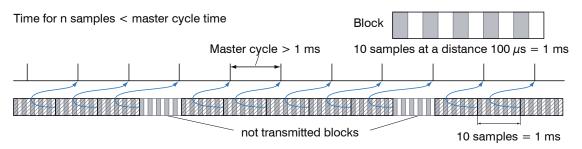
Load these settings with Actions / Reload Devices (F4) in the IF-C14x1.



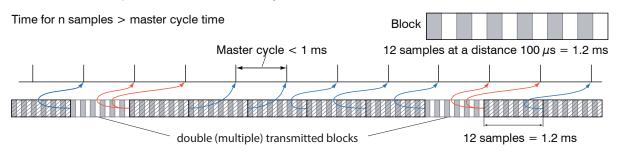
Every process data frame now contains 80 bytes (1) measuring data (2 measurement values (3) per 4 bytes (2) \* 10 measuring data records).

In order to ensure that no samples will disappear, due to the high asymmetry between master cycle and slave cycle, the master cycle time is subject to be less than the time which is required for the generation of a block consisting of x samples.

A complete block is generated from the stated samples and first presented to the EtherCAT side after all stated samples have been written into the block. If the time for the writing into the block is shorter than the master cycle time, unfortunately single blocks cannot be transmitted. It can happen that the next block has already been filled with samples, before the previous filled block has been picked up with a master cycle.



If the number of samples selected is to high, i.e. the time for the filling of a block is longer than the master cycle time, each block is picked up by a master cycle. However, single blocks and therefore samples are transmitted twice or even more often. This can be detected on the master side by the transmission of the Timestamp or Valuecounter, see object 0x21B0.





## A 8.7 Meaning of STATUS-LED in EtherCAT Operation

STATUS-LED

	Green	
	Green off	INIT status
	Green flashing 2.5 Hz	PRE-OP status
	Green Single Flash, 200 ms ON / 1000 ms OFF	SAFE-OP status
	Green on	OP status
Status LED	Red (are displayed in the breaks of the green L	ED):
	Red off	No error
	Red flashing 2.5 Hz	Invalid configuration
	Red Single Flash, 200 ms ON / 1000 ms OFF	Not requested status change
	Red Double Flash, 200 ms ON / 200 ms OFF 200 ms ON 400 ms OFF	Timeout of the watchdog
	Red flashing 10 Hz	Error by initializing

## A 8.8 EtherCAT Configuration with the Beckhoff TwinCAT© Manager

For example the Beckhoff TwinCAT Manager can be used as EtherCAT Master on the PC.

The device description file (EtherCAT®-Slave Information) IFC242x.xml can be found online at www.micro-epsilon.com/service/download/software/.

- Copy the device description file (EtherCAT®-Slave Information) confocalDT24XX. xml from the included CD in the directory \\TwinCAT\IO\EtherCAT before the measuring device can be configured via EtherCAT®.
- Delete any older files (IFC2451.xml, IFC2461.xml and IFC2471.xml).

EtherCAT®-Slave information files are XML files, which specify the characteristics of the Slave device for the EtherCAT® Master and contain informations to the supported communication objects.

Restart the TwinCAT Manager after copying.

#### Searching for a device:

- Select the tab I/O Devices, then Scan Devices.
- **Confirm with** OK.

: 🔒 🚳 🖪 🐰	<b>助</b> 1.1	AA A	
		ara O	
M - Configuration			Number
Append Device			
Import Device			
Scan Devices	TwinCAT System Ma	nager	
Contra 1	HINT: Not	all types of devic	es can be found a
Laste			
	Configuration	Configuration	Configuration

Select a network card, where EtherCAT®–Slaves should be searched.

new I/O devices found	2
□Device 1 (FIT Ethernet) [LAN Dománe (RV/DIA nForce Networking Controller - P] ⊘ Device 3 (EtherCA1) [LAN Verbindung (Intel(R) PR0/1000 GT Desktop Adapte)	Cancel Select All Unselect All
<b>Confirm with</b> OK.	

It appears the window Scan for boxes (EtherCAT®-Slaves).

TwinCAT System Manager 🔣	
Scan for boxes	
Yes No	
Confirm with Y	es.

The confocalDT 24x1 is now shown in a list.

Now confirm the window Activate Free Run with Yes.

	and the second se	EtherCAT Online CoE - 0	nane		
I/O Devices     Device 3 (EtherCAT)		Device 3 (EtherCAT)		ld 3	
Device 3-Image Device 3-Image-Info	Type:	EfferCAT			
Grouts     Gotputs     Gotputs	Comment:			-	
B Geb Box 1 (JFC 2451)					
B Happings				21	
	r	Disabled		Create symbols	
	TwinCAT S	ystem Manager 🔀			
	2	Activate Free Run			
		_			
	20	Noin			
	Narber		Address Type	In 520	104
	Number 0	Box Name Box 1 (IFC 2451)	Address Type 1001 IFC 245	lin 3an	04
	Nation 1			In See	104

The current status should be at least PREOP, SAFEOP or OP on the Online side.

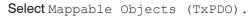
B) TOTE Carefuguetion     By Diro - Carefuguetion     By Diro - Carefuguetion     By Diro - Carefuguetion     By Diro - Carefuguetion     Di	State Machine Init Pre-Op Op DLL Status Port A:	AT Process Data Startup e Bootstop Sale-Op Cleve Fine Career / Open No Career / Coced	Content State: Requested State	Orline D	PREOP	$\geqslant$	
	Part D		Type	<u>Sce</u> 2.0	>Add 1548.0	In/Out Input	User ID
	of State	0×0052 (82)	OINT	2.0	1540.0	and an	

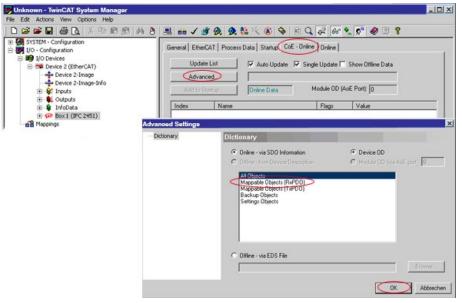
If ERP PREOP appears in the Current State, the cause is reported in the message window. In the example here the incorrect initialization of the synchronization manager is the reason. This will be the case if the settings for the PDO mapping in the sensor are different from the settings in the ESI file (confocalDT24XX.xml).

On delivery of the sensor only one measurement value (distance 1) is set as output size (in both the sensor and in the ESI file).

Additional data can be selected in the object 21B0h, for example intensity or minimum.

To configure the synchronous manager correctly, it is first necessary to read the object directory of IFC24x1.



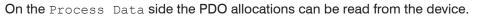


Thus TwinCAT reads all values of objects known to it. This is important for the next step, because the mapping (objects 0x1A00, 0x1A01, ... and 0x1C13) has changed.
Confirm with OK.

Unknown - TwinCAT System Manager File Edit Actions View Options Help					×
Configuration     Configuration     Configuration     Orevices		cess Data   Startup CoE -	Online Online	Show Offine Data	
and a state of the	-	Control via SD0 Informa Control via SD0 Informa Control via SD0 Informa Control via SD0 Control via SD0 Information Control via SD0 Information Control via SD0 File	cription	Device 0D     (Via AvE port)	×
				OK Abbrecher	

Example for a complete object directory (subject to change without prior notice).

Index     Pack Undex     P skolu Undex<				vine   Online	🐮 🔨 💽 🗞 🛛	AT   Proces	eneral   EtherC	Configuration figuration evices
Device 3-mage-brid         Device 3-mage-brid           If price         Transmission         Model 00 (NoE Port; 0)           Index         Name         Flags         Value           Index         Name         Flags		-	Show Uffine Data	ingle Update I				
Index         Name         Plags         Value         Index           is de Bac (RC2543)         1000         Device type         R0         0.0002000(1)(1072)           i 000         Device type         R0         0.0002000(1)(1072)           i 000         Device type         R0         0.0002000(1)(1072)           i 0003         Eine hatop         RW         > 0 (i)           i 1003         Device type motion         R0         V 4083           i 1004         Schware version         R0         V 4085           i 10040         Borne hatop         RW         > 1 (           i 10040         Borne hatop         RD         > 2 (           i 10040         Borne hatop         RD         > 4 (           i 10010         Device hatop         RD         > 3 (           i 20010         Stander         RD         > 3 (           i 20010         Stander         RD         > 3		-	VoE Port): 0	Module OD (A				Device 3-Image-Info
Bit data frame (Iffer 2451))         □100         Device type         RO         0.000000(131072)           Bit Pappings         □1011         Enter register         RO         0.000(0)           ±         10032         Enter heldow         RW         >>0            ±         10038         Enter heldow         RU         V 4086           ±         10034         Schware version         RD         V 4086           ±         10030         Stress namoget bree         RO         >> 4 <			Value	Flags		Name	Index	
		31072)	0x00020000 (13		type	Device	1000	
Bit Holpstage         4: 1002.00         Ency heliogy         FW         9.0 c <sup>-</sup> 1008         Device name         R0         IFC2451           1009         Hadringe version         R0         V 4.085           1009         Hadringe version         R0         V 4.085           1009         Hadringe version         R0         V 4.086           1010         Software version         R0         V 4.086           10100         Berlay         R0         > 3.2            101100         Info100 arrays         R0         > 3.2            101200         Software version         R0         > 3.2            101210         Use feel         R0         > 3.2            101200         Software version         R0         > 3.2            101210         Use feel         R0         > 3.2            101200         Software         R0         > 3.2            1012000								
1008         Device name         RO         FEC381           1008         Hodwas venion         RO         V 4.083           1008         Software venion         RO         V 4.083           1008         Sync manage type         RO         > 4.4           10100         Sync manage type         RO         > 4.4           10100         Software         RO         > 7.4           10000         Software         RO         > 7.4           10000         Software         RO         > 8.4           10000         Software         RO         > 8.4           100000         Software         RO         > 3.6           10000         Software         RO         > 1.6           10000         Software         RO         > 1.6           10000         Software         RO         > 1.6           10000         Software         RO         >								ngs
100Å         Software version         FIQ         V 4.085           +         1100Å         FRO         3.4            +         14000         FRO         5.23            +         14000         Sign emarger type         FRO         5.23            +         1000         Sign emarger type         FRO         5.23            +         1000         Sign emarger type         FRO         5.23            +         10100         Sign emarger type         FRO         5.4            +         101100         User Heal         FRO         5.7            +         20050         Controller info         FRO         5.4            +         2011.0         Caterolline         FRO         5.4            +         2011.0         Caterolline         FRO         5.4            +         2011.0         Caterolline         FRO         5.6            +         2012.0         Select terror         FRO         5.6            +         2013.0         Avecuring program         FW         OutColl (0)           +         2180.0         Digit interfaces         FRO         5.9            +         2180.0         D								
100A         Software version         R0         V 4.085           H         Home Mark         R0         > 4 <								
* 10180         Identity         RQ         > 4 <           * 10080         Taff00         RQ         > 23 <								
e         1.0000         ToPTO         R0         > 22            e         10000         Sync macroperize         R0         > 24            e         11010         Sync macroperize         R0         > 34            e         11010         User Hewl         R0         > 7            e         20050         Controller info         R0         > 8            e         20110         Step         R0         > 3            e         20110         Concolor         R0         > 3            e         20110         Concolor         R0         > 3            e         20110         Reset         R0         > 3            e         20120         Reset writing         R0         > 3            e         20120         Stemmer         R0         > 3            e         20120         Stemmer         R0         > 3            e         20120         Stemmer         R0         > 1            e         2154         Meanutrip program/statistic         R0         > 21            e         21610         Dipal infentoce         R0         > 21            e         21600 <td< td=""><td></td><th></th><td></td><td>BO</td><td></td><td>Identity</td><td></td><td></td></td<>				BO		Identity		
#         10000         Sync manager lager         FIO         > 4 <           1         11         11         11         11           20110         User level         FIO         > 7 <								
11     C1240     ToPO0 assign     FW     > 1        12     Otto Uset Vevl     R0     > 7        12     20050     Controller info     R0     > 8        12     20150     Setup     R0     > 3        20110     Connection     R0     > 3        20110     Reset     R0     > 3        20120     Status     R0     > 3        20131     Reset/proponer     R0     > 3        20141     Reset/proponer     R0     > 3        20151     Status     R0     > 3        20151     Status     R0     > 3        20151     Status     R0     > 3        20152     Status     R0     > 9        20154     Averacing/proponer     R0     > 9        20151     Averacing/prover harding/statistic     R0     > 21        20151     Status     R0     > 21					anager hine			
iii     2001-0     User level     PIO     > 7 <								
in         20050         Controller info         PIO         > 9 <           in         2010         Setup         PIO         > 4 <								
iii     20100     Solup     PO     > 4        iii     Constraint     RO     > 3        2010     Reset     RW     0.000 (0)       iii     2010     Factory settings     RO     > 3        iii     Difference     RO     > 3        iii     Difference     RO     > 5        iii     Difference     RO     > 1        iii     2154     Meanuring program     RW     0.0000 (0)       iii     2151     Averaging/met handing/statistic     RO     > 9        iii     2160     Diplal interfaces     RO     > 21        iii     2160     Reset     80     > 21								
# 2011:0         Connection         PIO         > 3            2010         Reset         RV         0.000 (0)           # 2005:0         Factory settings         PIO         > 3            # 2005:0         Stream         R0         > 3            # 2005:0         Stream         R0         > 3            # 2152:0         Select remote         R0         > 1            # 2152:0         Select remote         R0         > 5            # 2152:0         Digital interfaces         R0         > 25            # 2160:0         Digital interfaces         R0         > 25								
2010         Reset         RW         0.000 (0)           # 20105         Factory withing:         R0         > 3            # 20100         Factory withing:         R0         > 5            # 20120.         Select sensor         R0         > 1            = 21520.         Select sensor         R0         > 1            = 2154         Measuring program         RV         0.0000 (0)           # 21810         Dipial interfaces         R0         > 9            # 21800         Dipial interfaces         R0         > 21					00			
#         2105.0         Factory suffigure         P(1)         2.3 < *           0         BLGO         Servers         P(2)         5.5            #         2152.0         Select remot         P(0)         5.6            2         2152.0         Select remot         P(0)         5.1            2         214.4         Massaring program dirg/statisfics         P(0)         0.0000 (0)           #         2180.0         Dipla/infences         P(0)         > 21 <	-				011			
P1         DEG0         Servera         RO         > 5 c -           r         2152.0         Select servera         RO         > 1 c           -2154         Measuring program         RV         0.0000(0)           r         2161         Averaging/relativities         RO         > 9 c           +         21610         Digital interfaces         RO         > 2 c           +         21600         Ethernet         RO         > 2 c           +         21600         Ethernet         RO         > 2 c					eatliner			
#         2152.0         Select termor         R0         > 1 <           2154         Meanzing program         RW         0x00000(0)           #         2181.0         Averaging/denot handing/statistics         R0         > 9            #         2181.0         Dipliki intelexces         R0         > 9            #         2180.0         Dipliki intelexces         R0         > 21            #         210.00         Elternet         R0         > 8					securitys			
2154 Mexauring program RW 0.00000(0)     12161 Asvergiven handing/statistice R0 > 3 <         + 21800 Digital interfaces R0 > 21 <         + 2100. Elternet R0 > 28 <				BO	entrol			
⊕ 2181:0         Averaging/enror handing/statistics         RO         > 9            ⊕ 2180:0         Digital intellaces         RO         > 21            ⊕ 2100:0         Element         RO         > 8								
			>5<	BO		Analog	€ 21D0:0	
a stoko winky opa	2				a	Analogic	-	



👼 Unknown - TwinCAT System Ma	nager								_ 0	×
File Edit Actions View Options Help										
] 🗅 📽 📽 🔛 🎒 🗟   X 🖻 🖷	8 M 8 🖳 🖴	i 🗸 谢 👧 🧶 🖏	* 🦄 😵	🖹 C	<u>م</u> الم	<b>%</b>	🧶 🕑	ę		
(a) ∰ SYSTEM - Configuration         (b) ← Configuration         (c) ⊕ (c) = (	General EtherCAT DC Sync Manager SM Size Type 0 256 Mbd/ 1 256 Mbd/ 2 0 OUtpt 3 4 Input	PDO Lis Flag: Index: DxTA0	t Size I	ne   Onlir Name Measurinj	<u> </u>		Flags	S№ 3		
	•								•	
	PDO Assignment (0x1C1		ntent (0x1A00):	,						
	✓ 0x1A00	Index		Offs 0.0	Name Distance 1 eth			Type DINT		
		*		4.0					Þ	
	Download	Predefi	ned PDO Assignm	nent: (nor	ne)				-	
	PDO Assignment	Lord P	DO info from devi	inn					- 1	
	PD0 Configuration			ice						
		Sync U	nit Assignment							
l i	Name	Online	Туре	Size	>Addr	In/Out	User ID	Linked to		-
	♦ Distance 1 ether	0x7FFFFFFB (2147	DINT	4.0	26.0	Input	0	1 111000 00		-1
	<b>♦</b> †WcState	1	BOOL	0.1	1522.0	Input	õ			
	<b>♦</b> † State	0×0002 (2)	UINT	2.0	1548.0	Input	0			
	🔊 AdsAddr	C0 A8 01 6F 03 01	AMSADDRESS	8.0	1550.0	Input	0			
	•									۲
Ready						Local (1	92.168.1.1	(11.1.1) 🖸	onfig Mode	11.

The scope of the provided process data and the assignment of the SyncManager may be viewed now.

🗃 🖬 🖬 🎒 🖪 🕹 🖬 🛱	1 8   44 8   🗷 📾 🗸 🎯 🖉	🗴 🌺 🔧 🐼 🍫 🛛	E 🔍 🖓 🚳 🍢 🕵	🔗 🗈 🔋	
SYSTEM - Configuration I/O - Configuration	General EtherCAT DC Process Sync Manager:	Data Startup CoE - Online	Online		
🖻 🐋 Device 2 (EtherCAT)					10.
	SM Size Type Flags 0 256 MbxOut	Index Size Nar 0x1A00 36.0 Sar	ne nole 0	Flags SM	<u>S</u> ▲
Device 2-Image-Info	1 256 Mbxbut		nple 0 nple 1	F	0
E St Inputs	2 0 Outputs		nple 2	F	ŏ
Dutputs	3 36 Inputs		nple 3	F	0
🗈 😝 InfoData		0x1A04 36.0 San	nple 4	F	0-
			nple 5	F	0
Mappings			nple 6	F	0
			nple 7	F	0
			nple 8	F	0
			nple 9	1	0
			nple 10	1	0
			nple 11 nple 12	F	0
			nple 13	F	0
			ople 14	F	0.
		•			•
	PDO Assignment (0x1C13):	PDO Content (0x1A00);			
	▼ 0x1A00	Index Size Offs	Name	Туре	Defa
	0x1A01	0x6065:01 4.0 0.0	Shutter time Ethernet/E		
	0x1A02	0x6065.05 4.0 4.0	Value counter Ethernet		>
	0x1A03	Dx6065:06 4.0 8.0	Timestamp Ethernet/Et		1
	0x1A04	0x6065:08 4.0 12.0			1
	0x1A05	0x6065:09 4.0 16.0			
	□ 0x1A06	0x6065:19 4.0 20.0			
	0x1A00	0x6065:29 4.0 24.1 0x6065:2A 4.0 28.1			
	0x1A08	0x6065:2A 4.0 28.0 0x6065:2B 4.0 32.0			/
	0x1A09	00000000 4.0 32.0		eneorem DINT	
			,,,,,,,		
	0x1A0A	•			<u> </u>
	Download	Predefined PDO Assignmen	t: (none)		-
	PD0 Assignment	Load PDO info from device			-
	PD0 Configuration	Sync Unit Assignment			
	Name Online	Type	ize >Addr In/Out	User ID Linked to	

Now select the tab Reload Devices under the menu item Actions. The configuration is now complete.

File Edit	Actions	View	Options	Help			
🗅 🖨	Gen Gen	erate <u>N</u>	<u>1</u> appings			Ctrl+M	É
🛨 🚱 SY:	✓ Che	ck Conl	figuration			Ctrl+H	E
🖻 📝 I/C				n	Ctr	l+Shift-F4	e
	😥 Set/	Reset	TwinCAT t	o Run Mo	ide	Ctrl+F4	n
	👧 Set/	Reset '	TwinCAT t	o Config	Mode	Shift-F4	N.
<	👬 Relo	ad Dev	/ices			> F4	
	🖳 Cho	ose Tai	rget Syste	m		F8	
	Rea	d Targe	et Server \	/ersions.			
	REG ACCE	ess Bus	Coupler/I	P Link Re	gister		

The selected measurement values are transmitted as process data in the status  $\ensuremath{\mathtt{SAFEOP}}$  and  $\ensuremath{\mathtt{OP}}$  .

Name	Online	Туре	Size	>Addr	In/Out	User ID	Linked to	
♦↑ Intensity 1 Ethernet/EtherCAT	0×00000000 (0)	UDINT	4.0	26.0	Input	0	607	
♦↑Distance 1 Ethernet/EtherCAT	0×00000000 (0)	UDINT	4.0	30.0	Input	0		
Q1 WcState	1	BOOL	0.1	1522.0	Input	0		
<b>♀</b> ↑State	8x0008 (8)	UINT	2.0	1548.0	Input	0		
🔊 AdsAddr	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 E	AMSADDRESS	8.0	1550.0	Input	0		
•								

# A 9 Operating Menu

Login	Announced user level	Value	only reading	
	Change to user- / professional level	Button logoff or enter password		
		Old password	Value	
	Change password	New password	Value	
		Repeat new password	Value	
	User level by restart	Professional / User		

Type of measure- ment	Distance measurement	Used peak	first / highest / last peak	Distance measurement: Distance to the n-th surface, depends on the selected peak.
	Thickness measurement	Used peak	first and second / first and last / second to last and last / highest and second highest peak	One-sided thickness measure- ment of transparent materials; the relevant material needs to be selected (refractive index).
		Selection of material	Vacuum / water	
				Multilayer Measurement: Selecta- ble distances for up to 6 peaks
	Multilayer Measurement 1)			Use refractive correction: Yes / No
				Material between Peak 1 / 26 and Peak 2 / 3 / 6

Sensor	Sensor type and serial number	Controller stores max. 20 different sensors.
Exposure mode/ measuring rate	Exposure mode	Automatic mode / Measurement mode / Manual mode / Alternating Two-Time-Mode / Automatic Two-Time-Mode
		- with IFC2451: 0.1 / 0.2 / 0.3 / 1 / 2.5 / 5 / 10 kHz
	Measuring rate	- with IFC2461: 0.1 / 0.2 / 0.3 / 1 / 2,5 / 5 / 10 / 25 kHz
		- with IFC2471LED: 0.1 / 1 / 2.5 / 5 / 10 / 25 / 50 / 70 kHz
		- with IFC2471: 0.3 / 1 / 2.5 / 5 / 10 / 25 / 50 / 70 kHz
		Value (0.1 μs 10.000 μs (IFC2451))
	Exposure time 1 in $\mu$ s	Value (0.1 μs 10.000 μs (IFC2461))
		Value (0.1 μs 3333.3 μs (IFC2471))
	Exposure time 2 (shorter) in $\mu$ s	Value (Value smaller than Exposure time 1)
Detection threshold	Value	Value in %, factory setting 1 %

<sup>1)</sup> Only with controller IFC24x1MP available

Averaging, error handling, statistics	Video averaging	Recursive 2 / 4 Moving 2 / 4 / 3 Median 3 / No a			The video averaging is carried out before measuring distances or thickness. Recom- mended for very small peaks.	
	Measured value	No averaging			Specify the type of averaging. The averag-	
	averaging	Moving N values	2 / 4 / 8 1024	Value	ing value N defines how many sequential measurements the controller will use for averaging, before issuing the next reading.	
		Recursive N values	2 32768	Value	Averaging does not affect the measurement frequency.	
		Median N values	3/5/7/9	Value		
	Error handling	Error output, no	measuremei	nt	Sensor displays an error number.	
	Hold last value	0 1024	Value	If no valid reading can be obtained, the last valid value can be hold for a certain period of time, and will be issued repeatedly. If the reading is 0, the last valid value is hold permanently.		
	Spike correction	No				
		Yes	Evaluation length 1 - 10	Value	This filter removes individual very high spikes from a relatively constant course of measure- ment value. Smaller spikes are preserved.	
			Max. tole- rance ran- ge (mm) 0 - 100	Value		
			Number of corrected value	Value		
			1 - 100			
Sta	Statistics	2 / 4 / 8 / 16 16384 / All measu- red values			The statistical values Minimum, Maximum and Peak-to-Peak are calculated and output from a predefined number of readings.	
	Signal for statis- tics calculation	Distance 1 6 / Difference 1 - 2 up to 5 - 6 <sup>1</sup>			For multilayer measurement program the sig- nal is selectable and will if not already done, added to the output via Ethernet automati- cally.	
			-			
Zeroing, mastering	Master value	Value Specify the thickness of a master object. Value range: – 2 x measuring range to + 2 x measuring				

mastering		value range. – 2 x measuring range to + 2 x measuring range		
Material	Material	Value	only reading	
database Material par	Material para-	Material name	Value	
	meter input	Material description	Value	
		Description by	One refractive index and Abbe value / Three refractive indices	
		nF at 486 nm	Value	
		nd at 587 nm	Value	
		nC at 656 nm	Value	
		Abbe value vd	Value	

1) Only with controller IFC24x1MP available

Digital interfaces	Digital interface selection	Output in the w net measureme / EtherCAT	eb diagram/ Ether- nt transfer / RS422	Defines which interface is used for data output. No parallel data output via multiple channels.			
	Data selection	Difference 1 - 2 up 5 - 6 <sup>1</sup> / Statistics Min / Statistics Peak- time / Intensity value(s) / Encoder 1 / Enc	Peak / Exposure of the (all) distance coder 2 / Encoder / Measured value	Select the relevant check boxes to choose which data are used for transmission. The data are issued one after the other in a de- fined sequence. RS422 allows transmission of no more than 32 records.			
	Ethernet set-	IP settings for	Address type	static IP-Address / D			
	tings controller Ethernet measured value transfer settings	controller	IP address	Value	Values for IP address /		
			Gateway	Value	gateway / subnet mask. Only for static IP ad-		
			Sub-network tag	Value	dress		
		measured	Transmission type	Server TCP IP / Client TCP IP / Client UDP IF / No transfer			
			IP-address	Value	only for Client TCP IP and Client UDP IP		
		Port		Value			
	Settings RS422	Baud rate		9.6   115.2   230.4   460.8   691.2   921.6   1500   2000   3500   4000 kBps			
	Ethernet/ EtherCAT			Ethernet / EtherCAT			
Switching out- puts	Assignment of the switch out- puts (Digital I/O)	Switch output "Error 2"		range (F2) /	Outside of the measuring it value (Gr1) / Upper 1 or Gr2 / no output		
	Limit value set-	Lower limit valu	ie (in mm)	Value	-120.0 120.0 mm		
	tings	Upper limit valu	, ,	Value	-120.0 120.0 mm		
			value that belongs to	o limit values	<b>Distance 1, 2</b> / Distance 3 6 / <b>Difference 1 - 2</b> / Difference 1 - 3 up 5 - 6 <sup>1</sup>		
	Switch threshold	of the error outputs		High active / low active			

	Output signal Distance 1, 2 / Distance 3 6 / Difference 1 - 2 / Difference 1 - 3 up 5 - 6 <sup>-1</sup>		With the distance measurement program only Distance 1 can be measured.				
	Output range	4 20 mA / 0 5 V / 0 10 V / -5 5 V / -10 10 V / inactive	Either the voltage or the current output on the controller can be used at any given time.				
	Scaling	Scaling Standard scaling		Distance measurement: scaled to 0 measuring range Thickness measurement: scaled to 0 2 * measuring range			
		Two-point-scaling	Start of range (in mm):	Value	-120.0 120.0 mm		
			End of range (in mm):	Value	-120.0 120.0 mm		

Output-data rate	Measured value		Only every nth value is used $(n = 1, 2 \dots 1000)$ . All other measured values are discarded.
	Reducing inter- faces	Analog / RS422 / Ethernet	Select the relevant check boxes to choose which interfaces are used for data reduc- tions.

Encoder inputs	Encoder 1 / 2 / 3	Interpolation		Single / Double / Quadruple resolution				
inputs		Effect on reference trac		No effect / track	Set on firs	st trac	k /Set with every	
		Set on value Max. value		Value		Starting value is less tha max. encoder value		
				Value		0 4	1294967294	
Trigger mode	Level triggering			Measured value output at		Level low / level high		
	Edge triggering	Measurement value		t of mea- ed value out with	Falling e	dge /	increasing edge	
	Luge inggening	Measurement value output		nber of Isured es	Value		0 16383	
	Software triggering	Measurement value input Measurement value output	mea	Number of measured values			0 16383	
		Measurement value		gering by	Encoder	1 / Er	ncoder 2 / Encoder	
	Encoder triggering	input Measurement value	Step size				0 2147483647	
			Low	er limit	Value		0 4294967295	
		output	Upp	er limit	Value		0 4294967295	
	No triggering	continuous value output						
	IFD24x1-Master	First controller in the measuring chain; synchronizes any subsequent con rollers.						
	Slave on IFD24x1- Master	Controller operates in dependence on the first controller.						
	Slave on external master	External synchronizatio synchronization source (IFC2451) / Min. 0,1 Min. 0.1 70 kHz (IFC possible to simultaneou	, such 25 kHz 2471L	n as a frequ z (IFC2461) ED) / Min. (	ency gen   ).3 70	erator. kHz (II	: Mín. 0.1 10 kHz FC2471). It is also	
Load / save settings	Setup no	1 / 2 / 3 8		You can permanently store eight different para meter sets in the controller.				
	Mantuanerin interface settings	Checkbox		Interface settings include network properties, such as the baud rate for the RS422 interface				
Manage setups	Data selection for transmission	Setup / material database		Depending on the selected measurement and interface settings, a parameter set contains a controller parameters except for the material database.				
	Setup no.	1 / 2 / 3 8		You can permanently store eight different pa meter sets in the controller.				
	Maintaining interface settings	Checkbox		Interface se such as the	ettings inc baud rat	clude te for t	network properties, the RS422 interface.	
Extras	Language	English / Deutsch						
	Factory settings	Only reset current setu	p (	Checkbox			ace settings include	
		Maintain interface setti	•			as the	ork properties, such e baud rate for the 22 interface.	

parameter set, so that they are available again when the sensor is switched on the next time.

Specification of a value required Value



MICRO-EPSILON MESSTECHNIK GmbH & Co. KG Koenigbacher Str. 15 · 94496 Ortenburg / Germany Tel +49 (0) 8542 / 168-0 · Fax +49 (0) 8542 / 168-90 info@micro-epsilon.com · www.micro-epsilon.com Your local contact: www.micro-epsilon.com/contact/worldwide/

X9751238-C052121DTa © MICRO-EPSILON MESSTECHNIK